

CASTLE OF ST ANGELO AND THE DOME OF ST PETERS

232

THE

# FIRST BOOK OF HISTORY

COMBINED WITH

## GEOGRAPHY AND CHRONOLOGY,

FOR

YOUNGER CLASSES,

Bibliothèque,

Le Séminaire de Québec

3, rue Saint-Université,  
Québec



BY JOHN G. SHEA.

THIRD REVISED EDITION.

NEW YORK:

D. & J. SADLER & CO., 164 WILLIAM STREET.

BOSTON: 128 FEDERAL STREET

MONTREAL: CORNER OF NOTRE DAME AND ST. FRANCIS XAVIER STS

1861.



We hereby approve of the Second Revised Edition of "Elements of History," and recommend its use in our Schools.

MONTREAL, Sept. 4th 1856.

BROTHER FACILE,  
PROVINCIAL  
of the Brothers of the Christian Schools in America.

---

Entered according to Act of Congress, in the year 1854, by  
D. & J. SADLER & CO.,  
In the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States, for the  
Southern District of New York.

---

---

Stereotyped by VINCENT DILL,  
29 & 31 Beekman St., N. Y.

---

## P R E F A C E .

---

This work, intended as a First Book for use in our Schools, is, as such, presented to the public. To follow up the first ideas of Geography by a small History, is undoubtedly the best method, but in adopting the usual plan of a division into Ancient and Modern History the child is lost: he no longer recognizes the countries about which he has already gained some idea.

In the plan here adopted, which is not however new, the child is still better grounded in his notions of Geography, and at the same time acquires a knowledge of the History of each country down to the present time; and on taking up a larger work will have a definite idea of the various countries mentioned in Ancient and Mediæval History, without being compelled to study separately a work on Ancient Geography.

Should the present attempt meet the approbation of teachers, it will be followed by a Second Book of History, on a more extended scale, retaining, however, as far as possible, the plan adopted in this.



The compiler, who has drawn his matter from original sources, and left the track of preceding compendiums, will cheerfully receive such suggestions as practical teachers may give after a trial of it. Added to which, the publishers have spared no pains nor expense in passing the work through the press, as will be apparent from the number and superior execution of the illustrations, which are adapted to the capacity of the juvenile student; the maps also may prove of much assistance to teacher and scholar, as an easier reference at the moment than having to displace a class to refer to a larger map.

It would be idle to give any directions as to its use, since two teachers rarely agree in their mode of instruction; yet the author would urge that the maps, so conveniently placed, should be really used in class, and made the object of lessons during the period devoted to the study of the historical portion.

NEW YORK, *October, 1854.*

## CONTENTS.

	Page		Page
Preliminary Chapter.—The Earth, . . .	9	Geography of Africa, . . .	83
Divisions of the Earth, . . .	13	Egypt, . . .	86
Geography of Asia, . . .	14	Nubia and Abyssinia, . . .	93
Map of Asia, . . .	15	Barbary States, . . .	96
Questions on the Map of Asia, . . .	16	Other African States, . . .	98
History of Asia, . . .	18	Chronology of Africa, . . .	99
The Creation, . . .	20	Map of Europe, . . .	100
History of the People of God, . . .	26	Questions on the Map of Europe, . . .	101
The Israelites in Egypt, . . .	29	Geography of Europe, . . .	102
Departure of the Israelites, . . .	31	Greece, . . .	103
The Kings, . . .	37	Turkish Empire, . . .	112
Chronology of the Bible, . . .	45	Modern Greece, . . .	114
Empires of Asia—Babylon and Assyria, . . .	46	Chronology of Greece, . . .	114
Persia, . . .	49	Italy—The Roman Republic— The Popedom, . . .	115
China, . . .	51	Chronology of Italy, . . .	127
Chronology of China, . . .	59	Spain and Portugal, . . .	128
Japan, . . .	60	Chronology of Spain and Por- tugal, . . .	134
Arabia—The Saracens, . . .	62	France, . . .	134
Tartary, . . .	69	Chronology of France, . . .	142
Siberia, . . .	72	England, . . .	143
Hindustan or India, . . .	73	Chronology of England, . . .	155
Farther India, . . .	77	Scotland, . . .	156
Chronology of India, . . .	79	Chronology of Scotland, . . .	160
General Chronology of Asia, . . .	80	Ireland, . . .	160
Map of Africa, . . .	81	Chronology of Ireland, . . .	167
Questions on the Map of Africa, . . .	82		

	Page		Page
Germany, . . . . .	167	The United States, . . . . .	209
Switzerland, . . . . .	173	Florida, . . . . .	210
Prussia, . . . . .	176	Virginia—New York, . . . . .	211
Chronology of Germany, . . . . .	178	New England, . . . . .	212
Holland and Belgium, . . . . .	179	Maryland, . . . . .	214
Denmark, Norway and Sweden, . . . . .	181	Colonies generally, . . . . .	215
Chronology, . . . . .	185	Louisiana, . . . . .	220
Poland, . . . . .	186	Colonies in general, . . . . .	221
Chronology of Poland, . . . . .	188	The Revolution, . . . . .	223
Russia, . . . . .	188	The Republic, . . . . .	228
Chronology of Russia, . . . . .	190	Map of South America, . . . . .	233
General Chronology of Europe, . . . . .	191	Questions on the Map of South	
Map of North America, . . . . .	193	America, . . . . .	234
Questions on the Map of North		Brazil, . . . . .	235
America, . . . . .	194	Spanish Republics, . . . . .	236
Geography of North America, . . . . .	195	Guiana, . . . . .	241
Iceland and Greenland, . . . . .	197	Chronology of America, . . . . .	243
Discovery of Columbus, . . . . .	199	Questions on Oceanica, . . . . .	245
Spanish America—The West		Geography of Oceanica, . . . . .	247
Indies, . . . . .	200	History of Malaysia, . . . . .	248
Mexico, . . . . .	201	History of Australasia, . . . . .	249
The British Possessions in North		History of Polynesia, . . . . .	252
America—Canada, . . . . .	204	Chronology of Oceanica, . . . . .	256
Nova Scotia and New Bruns-		The Church, . . . . .	257
wick, . . . . .	207		

	Page
.	209
.	210
.	211
.	212
.	214
.	215
.	220
.	221
.	223
.	228
.	233
South	
.	234
.	235
.	236
.	241
.	243
.	245
.	247
.	248
.	249
.	252
.	256
.	257

# FIRST BOOK OF HISTORY.

---

## PRELIMINARY CHAPTER.

### THE EARTH.

**Q.** What is the Earth?

**A.** The Earth is a small planet, moving around the sun.

**Q.** Are there many other planets?

**A.** There are many other planets, all moving around the sun. They can be seen at night and all look like the stars, but when we learn Astronomy we can distinguish them.

**Q.** What are the stars?

**A.** The stars are believed by many to be suns, each one having its own planets moving around it, but these are so far away that we cannot see them, even with the strongest telescope.

**Q.** What is the Universe?

**A.** The Universe is all that God created, including the sun and its planets, the stars, and all that live and move in them.

**Q.** Do we know anything of the other planets?

**A.** We do not know anything of the other planets except their motions, nor of the stars except their position.

**Q.** What is Astronomy?

A. Astronomy is the science which teaches us about the motions of the planets, their distance from the sun, and all that has been learned as to the heavenly bodies.

Q. In what way is Astronomy useful?

A. Astronomy is of great use in navigation, as it enables ships to cross the ocean, where there are no landmarks to guide them on their way.

Q. Do we know much of our own planet?

A. In our days almost all parts of our planet are known to us, and we can learn about the different countries that compose it, the different races of men, the various kinds of animals, plants, metals and minerals to be found in different parts.

Q. What is Geography?

A. Geography is a description of the various divisions of the earth, and the different countries in each.

Q. What things in particular does Geography tell us?

A. Geography tells us, that this earth is round like a ball, that the surface is composed of land and water, that the land is intersected by large bodies of water called oceans and seas, and is crossed by streams of water called rivers. It tells us that the earth is in some places level, in others very elevated, and called mountains. Geography tells us that men in different countries differ in complexion, language, religion, dress, habits and manners, and are in this way distinguished and separated from each other.

Q. What is History?

A. History is an account of the important events that have occurred in various countries. Some histories tell about all countries, others about only one, as the History of England, or the United States. In this book we shall see a little about the history of all the different countries.

**Q.** How far back does History go?

**A.** The history of the world extends back to the Creation, which occurred about six thousand years ago.

**Q.** How do we know anything about the Creation?

**A.** We should not know anything about the Creation if God had not revealed it to men and inspired a holy prophet named Moses to write it down for our instruction. Many nations, that did not know the Bible, had very foolish accounts about the Creation. Many supposed the world to have been made or brought up from the depths of the water by a tortoise.

**Q.** How do we know the history of the world after the creation of man?

**A.** The history of mankind for a considerable period, and of the Jews down to our Saviour's coming, is contained in the Bible, written by inspired men. This is called sacred history. Every nation had its own account of its origin, but the early parts are full of silly fables. This is called profane history. In modern times things are written down as they happen and more correct accounts can be given.

**Q.** How do we know what to believe in profane history and the works on modern times?

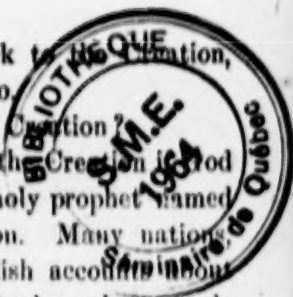
**A.** of many things related in profane history we cannot tell, whether they are true or not; in modern history, we should know who the writer is, for perhaps he writes only in favor of his own country, or his own religion.

**Q.** What is necessary, then, in studying History?

**A.** In studying, or reading history, we should use only books which good and capable persons tell us may be safely read.

**Q.** Is History an interesting study?

**A.** History is very interesting, because all people like to hear accounts of other times and countries. We like to read





about our first parents, about the Deluge, the Jewish people, our Saviour and his apostles. We like to hear about the great conquerors Sesostris, Alexander, Cæsar, Attila, Napoleon, and of the great empires that have existed in the world. We like to hear how, when all Europe was buried in paganism and idolatry, it was converted to Christianity, how our ancestors left their idols and received the priests and monks sent to convert them, how many nations at last changed their religion again and formed the various sects.

*Q.* What other interesting things are there in History?

*A.* History tells us how America was discovered, and settled by various nations in Europe, how the Indians were in many parts driven out so that we do not see them: how our ancestors settled this country, and being oppressed by England, joined together and drove out the English and then made it a new country called the United States.

*Q.* Is History important?

*A.* Yes, history is very important. It holds up for our imitation the lives of the good and holy persons in every rank who have served God; it shows us that though the good may suffer and the wicked triumph, God punishes, even in this life, the crimes of men and of whole nations.

*Q.* In what way is the history of the world generally divided?

*A.* The history of the world is generally divided into ancient and modern history. Ancient history comprises all that occurred from the Creation to the birth of our Saviour, and modern history what has happened since that time. The birth of our Saviour begins the Christian era, and dates are reckoned from it: thus the Creation took place 4004 B. C. (that is, before Christ), the American Revolution, 1776, A. D. (Anno Domini, or the year of our Lord.)



Map of the World.

## DIVISIONS OF THE EARTH.

**Q.** What are the great divisions of the earth?

**A.** There are on the globe two great oceans, the Atlantic and the Pacific, between these lie the two great continents, the Eastern and Western. The Eastern Continent is divided into Europe, Asia and Africa; the Western Continent is divided into North and South America. Besides these, there are a great number of islands in the Pacific Ocean, the largest of which, Australia, is sometimes called a continent. These islands generally are called Oceanica.

**Q.** In which continent were the human family created?

**A.** Adam was created, and the first men lived in Asia, in the Eastern Continent, about five thousand miles from us, and from Asia they spread to all other parts of the world.

**Q.** Where, then, does the earliest History commence?

**A.** The earliest history begins in Asia.

## GEOGRAPHY OF ASIA.

**Q.** In what part of the Eastern Continent is Asia?

**A.** Asia lies in the northeast part of the Eastern Continent. It is bounded on the north by the Arctic Ocean, west by Europe, south by the Indian Ocean and east by the Pacific, which separates it from North America.

**Q.** What can you tell us of the surface of Asia, its rivers and seas?

**A.** The interior of Asia is a vast plain, in some parts desert; lofty mountains run from west to east, on both sides of these plains. Some summits are the highest in the world. From these mountains come some of the largest rivers in the world, the Indus, Ganges, Burrampooter, Hoangho, Kiangku, and Amour.

**Q.** What is the climate of Asia, and its soil?

**A.** The climate in the north is extremely cold, especially on the Pacific, and the soil poor; in the south the climate is warm, and the land fertile.

**Q.** What are the chief productions of Asia?

**A.** The chief productions of Asia are rice, on which the mass of the people subsist, cotton and silk used for their dresses, tea, coffee, spices, fragrant woods and many useful drugs.

**Q.** What are the animals peculiar to Asia?

**A.** The animals peculiar to Asia, or nearly so, are the lion, tiger, elephant, camel, rhinoceros, the enormous snake called the boa-constrictor, and the bird of paradise.

**Q.** What are the chief divisions of Asia now?

**A.** The chief divisions of Asia now, are Siberia, or th

## MAP OF ASIA.



## QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF ASIA.

1. Bound Asia.
  2. What country lies on the north?
  3. What empire in the East? Of what is the Chinese Empire composed? *Ans.* Of China, Chinese Tartary and Thibet.
  4. What country lies between the Chinese Empire and the Caspian Sea?
  5. What country lies between Independent Tartary and the Persian Gulf?
  6. What peninsula lies between the Persian Gulf and the Red Sea? What is a peninsula?
  7. What country north of Arabia?
  8. What country in the south-east? How is India divided? H. B. S. A.
  9. What ocean lies on the north? On the east? On the south.
  10. What mountains between China and Siberia?
  11. What mountains between Siberia and Europe?
  12. What mountains north of Persian Empire and Hindostan?
  13. What three large rivers in Siberia? What three in the Chinese Empire? A. H. and Kiang-Ku.
  14. What river in Anam? *Ans.* Irrawaddy. What three in Hindostan? *Ans.* Indus, Ganges and Burrampooter.
  15. What two seas are in Asia? What seas on the borders of Asia? B, M, R, Sea of A, C, Y, J, O.
  16. In what country is Jerusalem? *Ans.* Turkey. Pekin? Jeddo? Mecca? Calcutta? Ava? Hue? Bokhara?
  17. Where is Corea? Japan? Ceylon? Nova Zembla? Where are the Philippine Islands?
-

Russian dominions in the north, the Chinese Empire in the middle and east, and the British possessions, or India in the south. Besides these, there are in the west Turkey in Asia, Persia, Arabia, Tartary, and in the east the Empires of Anam and Burmah and some smaller states.

*Q.* Has Asia always been divided in the same way?

*A.* Asia has at different times been otherwise divided, and various parts had other names. China and Japan are however the oldest empires in the world.

*Q.* What can you tell of the language, religion and manners of these nations?

*A.* These nations differ greatly in language, religion and manners. Some are quite learned and civilized, and have made great progress in the arts. None of these countries, however, are Christian, and many barbarous and cruel customs prevail.

*Q.* What are the prevailing religions in Asia?

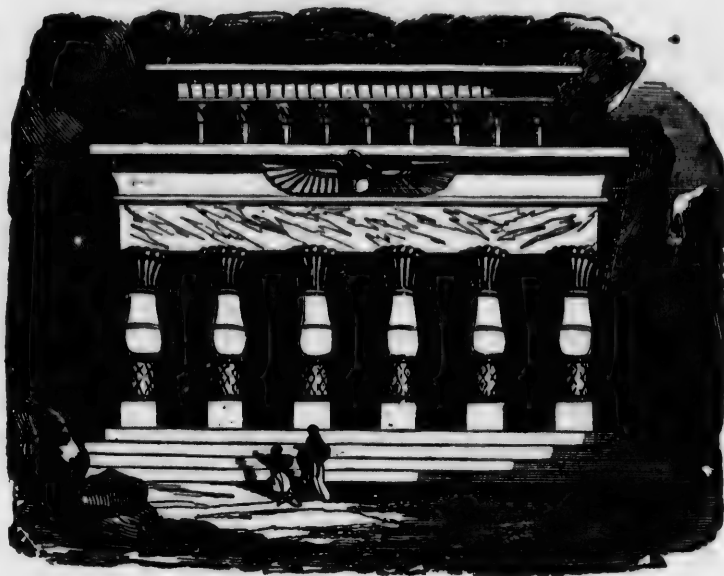
*A.* The prevailing religions are the Mahomedan, in the west, that of Buddha in the Chinese Empire, Farther India and Japan, and that of Brahma in India. Christians are to be found in all the Asiatic countries, but chiefly in the west.

*Q.* What is the population of Asia?

*A.* Asia is very populous and contains 500 millions of people, more than all the rest of the world together, and almost all of these are pagans. How grateful we should be that we were not born in the midst of idolatry.

---





Ancient Tombs at Petra.

## HISTORY OF ASIA.

**Q.** In which division of Asia did the greatest ancient kingdoms flourish?

**A.** The greatest and most interesting nations in ancient times flourished in what is now called Turkey and Persia: these were the Jews, Assyrians and Babylonians in Turkey, and the Medes and Persians in Persia.

**Q.** What is the condition of these countries now?

**A.** Turkey is now in a very reduced condition having been repeatedly conquered and ravaged by different nations. It is

governed by the Turks from whom it takes its name. Persia is in a more flourishing condition. Both are fertile, and were once highly cultivated and abounded in wealth.

**Q.** How is Turkey bounded?

**A.** Turkey is bounded on the north by the Black Sea, east by Persia, west by the Sea of Marmora, the Archipelago and the Mediterranean, and south by Arabia.

**Q.** How was Turkey anciently divided?

**A.** Turkey was anciently divided into several states. Troy, and afterwards Asia Minor in the northwest, Armenia in the northeast, Syria and Palestine in the southwest, and Nineveh and Babylon in the southeast.

**Q.** What are the rivers and mountains of Turkey?

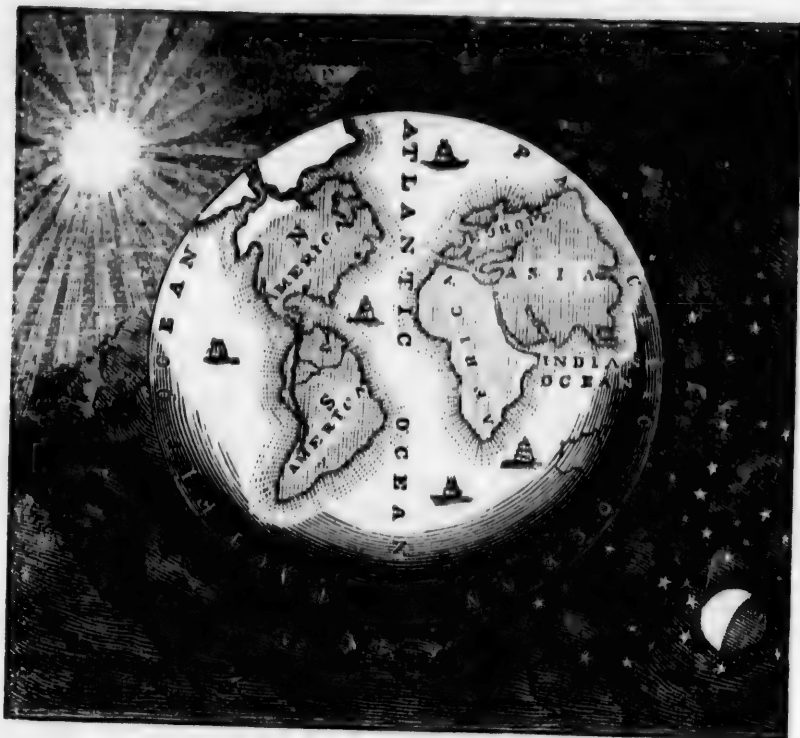
**A.** The chief mountains are the Taurus range and the mountains of Koordistan; the Euphrates, Tigris and Jordan are the chief rivers.

---

cient king-

n ancient  
d Persia:  
n Turkey,

ving been  
ns. It is



### THE CREATION.

1. We shall now tell you how this world was created, and then we shall proceed with the history of man, from Adam who was the first of all. The account of the Creation which we give, is found in the Bible, which was inspired by God; it is therefore true, and no other can be true.

2. God created the world at first dark and bare, enveloped in a deep mist; nothing existed but rocks and water; there were no trees, no shrubs, not a blade of grass, nor any living

---

1. Where do we get the account of the Creation? Why are we cer

creature ; all was dark and silent and desolate. Such was the earth as it first assumed form.

3. At the word of God, light appeared and purified the air, and the darkness rolled away. God then began to adorn the earth and prepare it for the abode of man, for whom he had created it. First of all, on the third day, he made the plants, from the blade of grass to the tall oak, and the earth was now clothed in beauty and verdure. Then God created the sun, the moon, and the stars, and made them centres of light, and all the planets began in their orbits to move around the sun.

4. On the fourth day, God first formed living creatures to inhabit this beautiful world. At his command, the sea produced the birds of every kind which fly in the air, and the fish which glide through the waters. Then the forests echoed with music, and the brilliant hues of the songsters enlivened the green leaves of the wood. On the fifth day, God created all the quadrupeds and reptiles of every size and kind, from the tiny mouse to the great elephant, some fitted for warm climates, others for the coldest regions.

5. When God had thus created the world, adorned it and peopled it with animals of every kind, he at last, on the sixth day, created man to enjoy it. Adam was the first man. God placed him in the garden of Eden, a Paradise of pleasure, and soon after formed from his side Eve, the first woman, to be his companion and wife. On them God imposed but one condition :

---

tain of it? 2. How was the world when first created? 3. What appeared at the word of God? What did God create the third day? What on the fourth? 4. What on the fifth? What on the sixth? 5. What did God create last of all? Where did he place Adam? What condition did he impose on our first parents? 6. What was the



reated, and  
rom Adam  
ation which  
by God; it

enveloped  
ter; there  
any living

are we cer

he forbid them to eat of the fruit of one tree, called the "Tree of the knowledge of good and evil."

6. Adam and Eve enjoyed the greatest happiness in each other's society, in the converse of angels and of God himself; they were free from all care, sickness and trouble; they suffered neither from the seasons, nor from hunger; all animals obeyed them and their days glided on in the most unalloyed happiness; free to enjoy all in the garden except the single tree, of which God had forbidden them to eat.

7. God had created beings superior to man, the spirits called Angels. Some of these rebelled against God and were deprived of the happiness of heaven. God permitted Satan their chief to tempt man. Eve listened to the tempter, she eat of the forbidden fruit, and offered some to Adam who also eat. By this sin all was changed. They became subject to sickness and death; they were driven from Paradise; the earth no longer produced fruit of itself; they were compelled to labor in order to procure food, and to shelter themselves from the animals, most of which now became fierce and cruel.

8. All this was the consequence of one sin; but besides this they lost all right to heaven, though God to console them in their misery, promised that a Redeemer should arise among their descendants who would restore them to his favor. By believing in this promised Redeemer and avoiding sin, they and their descendants might yet obtain heaven. Thus God has always punished sin, here and hereafter. Happy we, if truly

---

state of Adam and Eve? 7. What other beings had God created? What had some of them done? What did God permit them to do? How did our first parents fall? 8. What was all this the consequence of? What consolation did God give them? 9. How did Adam and Eve live?

contrite, we obtain pardon through the merits of Christ, and atone in this world for our transgressions.

9. Adam and Eve lived many hundred years and great numbers of children and descendants grew up around them. Of these Cain was the oldest. He was a wicked man, and although he knew how much misery came from one sin, and how necessary it was to please God, he offended him and offered him in sacrifice only the poorest of the productions of his field, for he cultivated the earth. When he saw that God was pleased with his brother Abel, Cain resolved to kill him, and blinded by passion, committed a dreadful murder. Thus one sin leads to another, and a neglect or indifference in our religious duties leads to the greatest crimes.

10. After committing this murder Cain fled away with his wife and children. His life was constantly tormented by fear, and when his family increased he built a strong city to live in. His descendants are noted as wicked, but skillful and ingenious men. They discovered the use of metals, worked mines, made tools, invented tents, musical instruments and many other articles for pleasure or comfort.

11. The descendants of Seth, another son of Adam formed a nation by themselves. They were less enterprising than the children of Cain, but they were good and served God. At last, however, by mingling with the wicked and marrying among them, they became as wicked as they. See how dangerous it is to associate with those who are bad; we soon become like them.

12. As men had grown wicked, God resolved to destroy

---

What do you know about their children? 10. What did Cain do then?  
11. What did the descendants of Seth do? 12. What did God resolve



them all except a pious man, named Noe, and his family consisting in all of eight persons: so few were there pleasing to him. To give them time to repent, God announced to Noe, that he would destroy the world by a deluge, and ordered him to build the Ark, that is, the chest, for it was a large ship, closed in like a chest. Noe was a hundred years building it and all that time urged men to return to God: but they ridiculed him and continued to live in sin. This seems very foolish, but we act so, whenever we remain in sin without seeking to recover God's grace.

13. The time for the Deluge came at last: Noe entered the ark with his family, and couples of all kinds of beasts. The sea rose, and the rain poured down in torrents for forty days and forty nights, so that the whole earth was covered with water above the tops of the highest mountains, and all men and other living creatures on the face of the earth were destroyed. This occurred 1656 years after the Creation, 2348 years before the coming of Christ.

14. After the expiration of forty days the waters began to subside, but it was not till the expiration of a year that the Ark rested on Mount Ararat and the earth became dry. Then Noe and his family went out, and, raising an altar, offered up a sacrifice to God, to thank him for his mercy to them in this awful punishment inflicted on the guilty.

15. The whole earth was now greatly changed, owing to the dense mass of waters which had so long rested on its surface. Noe and his family were the only members of the human family, and the length of their life was reduced, although

---

to do? What did God order Noe to do? 13. What came at last? What did Noe do? 14. How did the Deluge end? Where did the Ark rest? 15. What was the effect of the Deluge? 16. What foolish attempt did

his family could  
ere pleasing to  
ounced to Noe,  
nd ordered him  
a large ship,  
ars building it  
; but they ridi-  
seems very fool-  
without seeking

Noe entered the  
f beasts. The  
for forty days  
s covered with  
s, and all men  
earth were de-  
Creation, 2348

waters began to  
year that the  
me dry. Then  
er, offered up a  
o them in this

ged, owing to  
ted on its sur-  
mbers of the  
uced, although

e at last? What  
d the Ark rest?  
lish attempt did

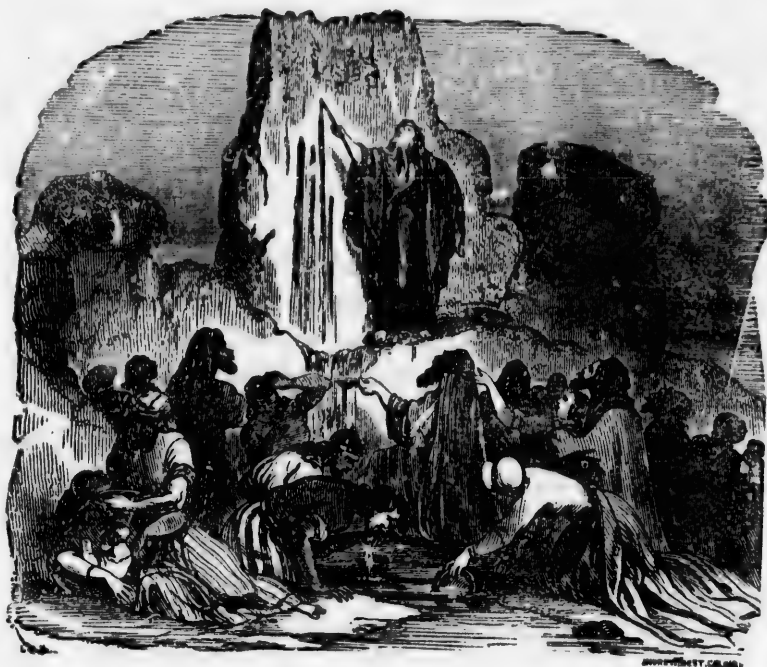
they now began to use stronger food and eat the flesh of animals.

16. As the descendants of Noe increased in numbers they spread along to the valley of the Tigris and Euphrates. When they had become quite numerous, some proposed to build a tower, the top of which should reach to heaven, as a place of refuge from any future deluge. God was displeased at the folly and impiety of their design and confounded their tongues, that is, he changed their language, so that they could not understand each other. They were now compelled to abandon the tower, thence called Babel, or Confusion, and, separating from each other, spread to different countries, where their descendants formed the various nations which now people the earth, differing from each other in language, complexion and customs, for all were changed.

17. The earliest nations that established regular governments, and formed kingdoms whose history can be traced, were Babylon, Assyria, Egypt and China. Some families roamed off alone and subsisted by hunting and fishing; these lost all knowledge of the arts, and much other knowledge then handed down by tradition. In this way they became ignorant and savage. Others kept together, and by aiding each other, advanced in civilization. By degrees however, all, both barbarous and civilized forgot God and fell into various kinds of idolatry. Only one family, which afterwards became a nation, worshipped him faithfully; and we shall first give their history, although their kingdom in its greatest prosperity was small and inconsiderable. It is, however, so connected with the history of the true religion and of civilization, that we begin with it.

---

the descendents of Noe make? 17. Which are the oldest nations? What soon spread through all nations?



Moses smiting the Rock.

### HISTORY OF THE PEOPLE OF GOD.

1. THE children of Sem, one of the sons of Noe, were more faithful than the rest to the service of God. Four hundred years after the Deluge, however, there were few even of them who had not become corrupted. Among those who still con-

---

1. What family was more faithful to God? Who was Abraham?

tinued to worship God was Abraham, a descendant of Sem, who dwelt among the Babylonians, or Chaldees.

2. The Chaldees had now almost all fallen into idolatry, and worshipped the sun and fire. They began to erect temples to them, and their priests offered sacrifice to inanimate things, to creatures, instead of offering them to God. This form of idolatry is called Sabaism, and it prevailed all over the world.

3. To save Abraham and his descendants from being perverted by the bad example of the Chaldees, God ordered him to leave his country and go to live in the land of Chanaan, as Syria was then called. Here Abraham and his family settled with their flocks and herds, and their numerous servants and herdsmen, for he was very rich and powerful, and though never styled a king was as mighty as any. He defeated some of them in battle, and was honored by them all.

4. God made to Abraham a promise that the Messiah should be born in his family, and repeated it to Isaac, the son and successor of Abraham. On the death of Isaac, his son Jacob became the heir of the promise. Jacob is also called Israel; he had twelve sons, whose descendants formed the twelve tribes of Israel.

5. Up to this time, the descendants of Abraham dwelt in Chanaan, but in the time of Jacob they went down into Egypt. One of his sons, Joseph, was his favorite, and his brothers soon disliked Joseph on that account. Other causes increased their dislike, and when he told them of a dream, in which he saw

---

2. Into what had the Chaldees fallen? 3. What order did God give Abraham? What did Abraham do? 4. What promise did God make Abraham? Who succeeded Abraham? Who followed Isaac? 5. Where



GOD.

oe, were more  
Four hundred  
even of them  
who still con-

was Abraham?

himself raised above them all, they determined to kill him. One of the brothers, wishing to save Joseph, told them to throw him into a well, and he then went away to get help to save him. During his absence some merchants came by, and the wicked brothers, changing their mind, sold Joseph as a slave. They then took his robe, and sprinkling it with blood, took it to their father, pretending that a wild beast had destroyed Joseph.

6. In the meantime that poor young man was hurried away, and sold at last in Egypt to Potiphar, a high officer in the court of the king. Here he lived for some time in peace, till Potiphar's wife accused him falsely of a crime, and poor Joseph was thrown into prison. God, however, befriended the innocent—he gave Joseph the power of interpreting dreams: and this soon became known by two circumstances which occurred in the prison.

7. At last the king had a dream which none could explain; and hearing of Joseph sent for him. Joseph told him that his dream was a sign from God, that there were to be seven years of great abundance, to be followed by seven of great scarcity. He also advised the king to gather up all the grain he could for seven years, so that when the famine came, there should be plenty to eat in his kingdom. The king was so pleased that he made Joseph his prime minister and gave him all power in Egypt.

8. After the seven years of plenty, the famine came on Egypt and all the countries around, and men and cattle perished

---

had the descendants of Abraham lived thus far? Who was Joseph? What is his story? 6. What became of Joseph in Egypt? 7. How was he released? To what office was he raised? 8. Who sent down to

ed to kill him  
, told them to  
to get help to  
came by, and  
d Joseph as a  
it with blood,  
beast had de-

hurried away,  
er in the court  
peace, till Poti-  
d poor Joseph  
nded the inno-  
dreams: and  
which occurred

could explain;  
d him that his  
be seven years  
great scarcity.  
grain he could  
here should be  
pleased that  
n all power in

ine came on  
attle perished

o was Joseph?  
gypt? 7. How  
o sent down to

because they had nothing to satisfy their hunger. Jacob with his family suffered like the rest, but hearing that there was plenty of provisions in Egypt, he sent his sons there to purchase a supply. Joseph recognized them, though he was not recognized by them. Treating them as spies, he detained one till his brother Benjamin, whom he dearly loved, was brought; then he declared to them who he was, and, sending for his father, brought the whole family to Egypt, where they settled in the land of Gessen, or Goshen.

---

### THE ISRAELITES IN EGYPT.

9. The Israelites soon became so numerous as to excite the jealousy of the Egyptians, who having been oppressed by a pastoral tribe, hated the Israelites, who, like them, lived by their flocks and herds. One of the kings compelled the Jews to labor in making bricks, and building walls and fortresses in various parts of the country. Although these labors were constantly increased the Israelites remained as numerous as ever, and the wicked king passed a cruel law ordering every boy to be put to death as soon as he was born. Many innocent children perished in this way.

10. Some of the Israelite women saved their children. One of them, the mother of Moses, concealed her child for several

---

Egypt for food? 9. How did the Israelites prosper in Egypt? What



months, but fearing discovery put him in a basket, and sent, it floating down the Nile, while her little daughter ran along the shore to watch it. At last it drifted to the shore, just where the king's daughter came down to bathe. The princess resolved to save the handsome babe, and the sister of Moses asked her whether she should run and get a Hebrew woman to nurse it, and brought her mother, who, full of joy and gratitude to God, received her child from the princess and took it home.

11. Moses had been adopted by the princess, and after remaining a few years with his mother, was taken to court and educated there in all the learning of the Egyptians, then the most civilized nation in the world. They were, however, ignorant of God, and worshipped animals and even vegetables, such as leeks and onions. By this we see that all human science and knowledge will not lead us to a knowledge of God and of truth. In this pagan court Moses preserved the worship of the true God, for his mother had carefully instructed him. What a blessing it is to have parents to instruct us, and how weak and wicked it is to disown our religion for those whom the world calls great, or learned, or fashionable.

12. When Moses was forty years old, he killed an Egyptian in attempting to defend an Israelite, and fearing the anger of the king, he fled away to the Madianites in Arabia, who were like him descended from Abraham and worshipped the true God. Here Moses remained several years, till God ordered him to return and lead the Israelites out of Egypt. Moses

---

cruel laws were made? 10. What child was saved by his mother? 11. Where was Moses educated? What was the religion of the Egyptians? How did Moses behave at court? 12. What happened when

went to the king and told him of the orders of God, but the king would not obey, and Moses by the command of the Almighty struck Egypt with several plagues; the country was overrun with insects of various kinds, and with frogs, the rivers were turned into blood, plagues and diseases swept off thousands of the people and cattle, but the king was inexorable, until God sent a destroying angel to kill the eldest son in every house. Then the wicked king gave them leave to depart.

---

### DEPARTURE OF THE ISRAELITES.

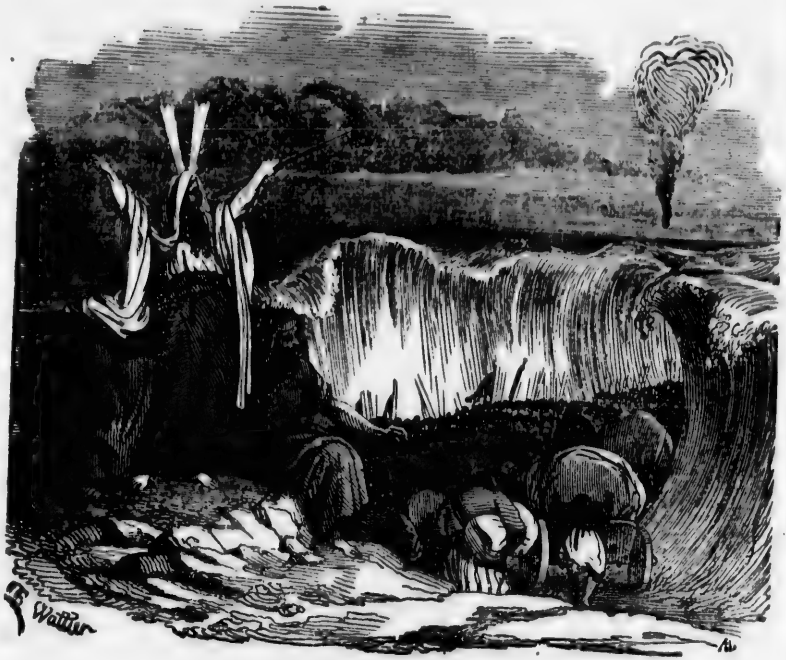
1. When the Pharaoh, or king of Egypt at last gave the permission to depart, Moses and the Israelites set out for the land of Chanaan to the number of six hundred thousand, with numerous flocks and herds. When the king saw that they were gone, he repented of what he had done, and raising a large army, started in pursuit and came in sight of them, just as the Israelites reached the banks of the Red Sea. In this emergency Moses stretched his hand over the sea; a passage opened; the waters stood like a wall on either side and the Israelites passed through; the Pharaoh followed, but when

---

Moses was forty years old? To what country did he flee? Why did he return to Egypt?

1. Describe the departure of the Israelites? How did they pass th

Moses reached the opposite side he again stretched his hand over the sea, and the Egyptians all perished.



Israelites' Passage of the Red Sea.

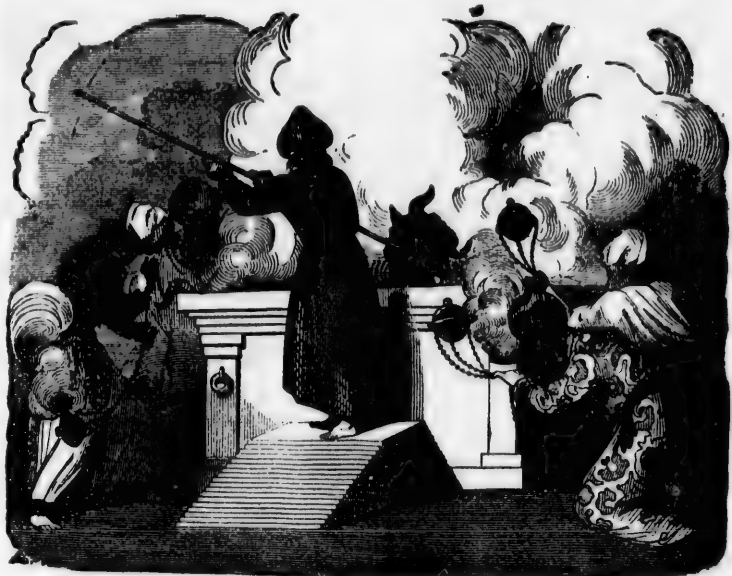
2. After this, God, on Mount Sinai, gave his law to Moses, engraving the ten chief commandments on two tablets of stone. He also instituted a regular form of worship, made Aaron his high-priest, and gave very minute directions as to the manner in which his worship was to be conducted and his temple to be

---

Red Sea? 2. What occurred at Mount Sinai? What was the first tem-

arranged. The first temple was only a tent or tabernacle, but after the Israelites reached the land of Chanaan a temple of stone was built for the service of the Almighty.

3. After marching across a small portion of Arabia, they came near Chanaan, but the Israelites, who were a stubborn people and had already fallen into idolatry, refused to enter the promised land, because the people were powerful and valiant. For this and other sins, God compelled them to wander for forty years in the deserts of Arabia. After that time they reached the river Jordan and Moses died, but Josue, his successor, led the people through the river, and entered the country which they had so long sought.



Sacrifice.

etched his hand



law to Moses,  
tablets of stone.  
de Aaron his  
to the manner  
temple to be

as the first tem-

4. The Chanaanites made a vigorous resistance and fought many hard battles, but Josue was miraculously aided by the Almighty, he defeated all the nations, and divided the country among the tribes of the Israelites, each tribe having a separate section of the country, except the tribe of Levi, who were priests and attendants on the temple. As long as Josue lived he ruled the people, and after his death they were governed by the High-priests or by the Judges, who were holy prophets raised up by God.

5. The Judges governed Israel for 356 years, and during this period the tribes were often subdued by surrounding nations, whom God raised up against them to punish their idolatry. Sometimes, too, they made war against each other, and one tribe was almost entirely destroyed. Of the Judges who governed during this period, the greatest were Gedeon and Samson.

6. Gedeon was raised up by God to deliver his people from the Madianites, and he succeeded in this way. He took three hundred men and gave each a trumpet and a lamp covered by an earthen jar. With these he advanced by night close to the enemy's camp, and at a word of command each broke the jar and began to sound his trumpet. The Madianites, seeing the lights flashing around them, and hearing the noise of so many trumpets, supposed that an army of Israelites was already in their camp, were thrown into confusion and attacking each other, died by their own hands, and the Israelites were delivered.

7. Samson was a very strong man; and was raised up to

---

ple? 3. Why were the Israelites compelled to wander in the desert? 4. Did the Israelites enter Chanaan easily? Who led them in? 5. Who governed Israel after Josue? 6. What can you tell about Gedeon?



Gideon and the Angel.

deliver the people from the Philistines. His strength was such that he once killed a lion by tearing his jaws asunder; on another occasion he carried off the gates of a city which had been locked to prevent his escape. His end was very mournful. Going among the Philistines, a woman of that race whom he loved, learned the secret, that his strength lay in his hair. While he was asleep she cut it off and his enemies came and bound him. His eyes were then put out and he was cast into prison, but as his hair grew again his strength returned, and being brought out one day into a temple to exhibit to the people, he seized two of the columns and throwing them down, caused the immense building to fall on all the crowd within, not one of whom escaped.



Samson throwing down the Temple.

8. When the Israelites had been governed for some time by Samuel, the last judge, they began to wish for a king. This displeased God, but as they again and again besought Samuel to obtain this, the prophet at last, by God's directions, elected a young man of the tribe of Benjamin, whose name was Saul, to be king over Israel.

---

7. Who was Samson? How did he die? 8. Who was the last judge? What happened in his time?

---



## THE KINGS.

1. Saul was the first king of Israel; for some time he followed the counsels of Samuel and was a good king. He delivered his country from the Philistines, and established order in all the tribes. After awhile, however, he fell into sin, and



The Death of Saul.

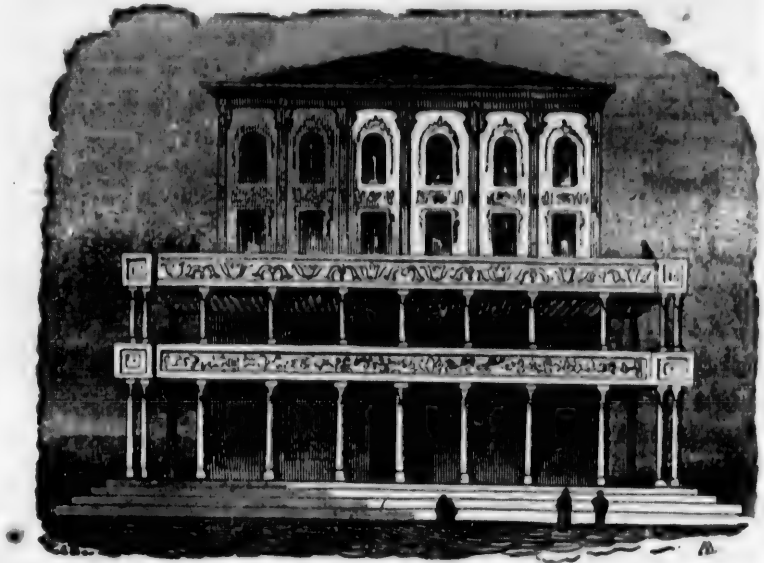
God chose as king, David, who when very young had distinguished himself by defeating the giant Goliath in single combat. He was Saul's son-in-law, but Saul now sought every

- 
1. Who was the first king? What was his character? 2. Who suc

means to put him to death. At last the Philistines again attempted to subdue the country, Saul marched against them, but was defeated and slain in the dreadful battle of Gilboe.

2. David then ascended the throne. He was a warlike prince and delivered his country from all bondage. Although he once fell into a grievous sin, he was a holy man, and inspired by God wrote many psalms, full of most sublime poetry, and containing many prophecies concerning our Saviour. His sin was punished by the rebellion of his son Absalom, who was at last killed.

3. Under Solomon, the son and successor of David, the



The Temple of Solomon

ceeded Saul? What can you tell of him? 3. What kind of king was

king  
bor  
thro  
was  
Jer  
a s  
and  
of s  
of i  
4  
his  
tion  
port  
and  
dom  
5.  
his  
of w  
Jez  
up p  
up t  
carri  
retur  
6.  
to th  
imita  
moth  
Solom  
kingd  
punish

alliances again  
against them,  
of Gilboa.

was a warlike  
age. Although  
n, and inspired  
the poetry, and  
four. His sin  
m, who was at

of David, the



and of king was

kingdom reached its highest point of power and glory. Neighboring kings sought his alliance; his wisdom was renowned throughout the world. During his reign an extensive trade was carried on with other nations, and Solomon erected in Jerusalem a magnificent temple to Almighty God, and built a splendid palace for himself. He, too, was an inspired writer, and the Book of Proverbs was composed by him; yet in spite of all his wisdom and former piety, he at last fell into the sin of idolatry, from a foolish complaisance for his pagan wives.

4. After Solomon's death his son Roboam succeeded, but as his rule was tyrannical, Jeroboam who had raised an insurrection in Solomon's time, returned from Egypt and being supported by ten tribes formed the kingdom of Israel. Judah and Benjamin adhered to Roboam, and constituted the kingdom of Judah.

5. Jeroboam established idolatry in his kingdom, and he and his successors were wicked men, and their reigns are one series of wars, crimes, tyranny and oppression. Achab and his wife, Jezabel, are above all noted for their wickedness. God raised up prophets in Israel to convert them, but finally gave them up to the Assyrians, who overthrew the kingdom of Israel, and carried the ten tribes away into captivity, from which they never returned.

6. The kingdom of Juda had some good kings, who adhered to the worship of God, but most of them fell into idolatry and imitated the kings of Israel. On the death of Ochosias, his mother Athalia, killed all his children, as she supposed, and

---

Solomon? 4. What happened on Solomon's death? How are these kingdoms called? 5. What did Jeroboam do in Israel? How did God punish the wickedness of Israel? 6. What was the character of the

usurped the throne. An infant prince, Joas, was saved in the temple by the High-priest Joiada, and some years after, Joiada armed the people in the temple, put the wicked queen to death, and raised Joas to the throne.

7. After several wicked kings had reigned, the country was invaded and subdued, Jerusalem was destroyed, and at last all the people were carried off captives to Babylon, where many were already in bondage. This captivity lasted seventy years, and is pathetically described by the prophet Jeremias.

8. When Cyrus overthrew the Empire of Babylon, he permitted the Jews to return. They rebuilt the city and temple after great difficulties, and have never since that time relapsed into idolatry. Those who went back were chiefly of the tribes of Levi, Benjamin and Juda, but there were some of the other ten tribes.

9. From this time the Jews have seldom been independent. When Alexander overthrew the Persians they fell into his power, and on his death were included in the kingdom of Seleucus. The tyranny of succeeding kings drove the Jews to revolt and under the brave Judas Macchabee, they at last achieved their independence, and the Macchabees, who were both kings and high-priests, ruled till the Romans invaded the country, and made Herod king of Judea, under them.

10. While the Jews were thus subject to the Romans, and in the reign of Herod, our Saviour, the Messias so long expected by the Jews, was born at Bethlehem, of the Blessed

---

kings of Juda? What is the story of Joas? 7. What finally became of the kingdom of Juda? 8. When did the Jews return to Jerusalem? 9. What is their history after this? Under whom did they revolt? Who last conquered them? 10. What happened in the reign of Herod?



The Nativity.

Virgin Mary, who, though very poor, was descended from the kings of Juda. Herod hearing that the Messiah was born, and fearing for his kingdom, ordered all the infants in Bethlehem to be put to death, but our Saviour had, by direction of God, been carried into Egypt by Joseph and Mary.

11. On Herod's death his kingdom was divided, and our Saviour returned, and grew up unnoticed by the Jews. At the age of thirty he was announced as the Messiah by St. John the Baptist, and began to preach. Few followed him, although he proved his power and goodness by his miracles and doctrine.

---

11. What happened on Herod's death? When did our Saviour begin

12. The high-priests at last resolved to put him to death, and he was seized while at prayer in the garden of Olives, dragged to Jerusalem, scourged and crucified by Pontius Pilate, the Roman Governor, to whom the Jews had given him. Thus were accomplished all that the prophets had foretold of our Saviour; and long before, David, Isaias, Jeremias, Daniel and many others had announced the time and place of his birth, and many circumstances of his life and death.



The Transfiguration.

13. The death of our Saviour completed our Rédemption, and by its merits we can enter heaven, if we are faithful to

---

to preach? 12. Who conspired against our Saviour? Describe his

his  
four  
men  
Jude  
1  
revo  
whic  
dest  
was  
pers  
15  
a lo  
visi  
seven  
Mah  
and  
16  
Pope  
the R  
preac  
crusa  
The  
by a  
a new  
kingd  
and n

passion  
caused  
countr  
tian n

his holy law and remain in the Church which his Apostles founded after his death. These Apostles were twelve poor men, chosen and inspired by him, who, all but the traitor Judas, preached the gospel in different countries.

14. Not many years after our Saviour's death, the Jews revolted against the Romans; but after a terrible siege in which a million of people perished, Titus took the city and destroyed it, as our Saviour had foretold, so that not a stone was left upon a stone. The Jews who survived were then dispersed all over the world.

15. Their country remained in the hands of the Romans for a long time, and was not only inhabited by Christians, but visited from every country by pious pilgrims. At last in the seventh century it was conquered by the Saracens, who were Mahometans. These new masters persecuted the Christians and oppressed the pilgrims who came from other countries.

16. These persecutions at last became so great that the Popes exhorted Christian princes to expel the Saracens from the Holy Land. A hermit named Peter went through Europe preaching to all to join in so good a cause. The army of the first crusade was without order or generals, and nearly all perished. The next was a powerful army, chiefly of French knights led by a prince named Godfrey, who took Jerusalem and founded a new kingdom. Other crusades were undertaken to support this kingdom, but Saladin, a powerful prince, at last took Jerusalem and made Guy, the last king, a prisoner.

---

passion? 13. What was the effect of our Saviour's death? 14. What caused the destruction of Jerusalem? 15. What was the state of the country after this? Who next conquered it? 16. Who aroused Christian nations to rescue it? What was the result of the first crusades?



17. Richard I. of England, Philip of France, and Frederic of Germany attempted to retake Jerusalem, but though they gained some advantage, they all failed. The last crusade was led by St. Louis, king of France, but it was unsuccessful. The Saracens remained masters of the country till they were subdued by the Turks who now possess it.

18. Judea is still a country greatly venerated by all Christians, and many pilgrims go to visit the spots made holy by the mysteries of our Saviour's life, death, and resurrection. On all these sites churches have been erected, and on the great festival of Holy Week, Christians of every nation are found gathered there.

---

Who overthrew the new kingdom? 17. What kings endeavored to recover it? Who led the last crusade? Who finally conquered the country? What is the state of the country now?

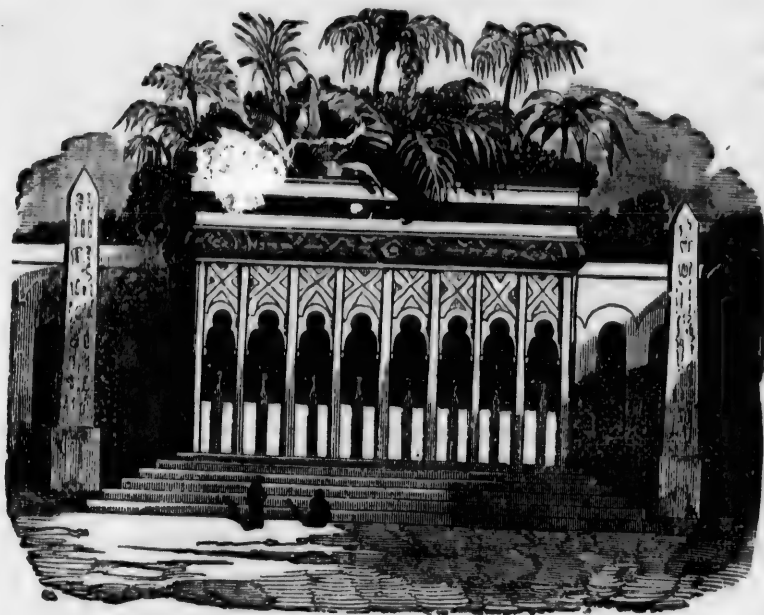
---

God or  
The De  
Abraha  
Joseph  
The Isr  
Saul is  
David  
Solomo  
The kin  
The kin  
The kin  
The Je  
The Je  
The Je  
The Je  
The Je

Jerusal  
Countr  
First C  
Last C  
Countr

## CHRONOLOGY OF THE BIBLE.

	B. C.
God created the world, . . . . .	4000
The Deluge took place, . . . . .	2344
Abraham was called by God to found a people, . . . . .	1917
Joseph went down into Egypt, . . . . .	1728
The Israelites left Egypt, . . . . .	1487
Saul is chosen the first king, . . . . .	1091
David became king in . . . . .	1066
Solomon built the temple of Jerusalem, . . . . .	1008
The kingdom is divided into Israel and Juda, . . . . .	971
The kingdom of Israel was overthrown in . . . . .	718
The kingdom of Juda was overthrown in . . . . .	588
The Jews return to Jerusalem in . . . . .	532
The Jews conquered by the Greeks, . . . . .	332
The Jews achieve their independence under Judas Macchabee, . . . . .	162
The Jews conquered by the Romans, . . . . .	65
BIRTH OF CHRIST,	
	A. D.
Jerusalem destroyed by Titus, . . . . .	70
Country conquered by the Saracens, . . . . .	637
First Crusade, . . . . .	1095
Last Crusade, . . . . .	1270
Country conquered by the Turks, . . . . .	1517



The Walls of Babylon.

## THE EMPIRES OF ASIA.

### BABYLON AND ASSYRIA.

1. Soon after the confusion of tongues Nimrod founded near Babel the kingdom of Babylon, and about the same time Assur founded that of Niniveh. These were both powerful kingdoms, and after a little while were united by Ninus who was a great warrior.

- 
1. Who founded Babylon? Who founded Assyria? 2. Who succeeded

2. After the death of Ninus his wife Semiramis ascended the throne. She was a very ambitious woman and did everything to extend the power and magnificence of her empire. She adorned Niniveh with splendid buildings, and made war on many nations, several of whom she conquered. She invaded India, but the people of that country defeated her and drove her out.

3. After the time of Semiramis the history of this country is very obscure. Sardanapalus was the last king : he was a very effeminate and voluptuous prince, and being attacked by one of his satraps, set fire to his palace and perished there with his wives and treasures. On his death three new kingdoms arose, Media, Babylon and Niniveh or Assyria.

4. The Medes at first formed a republic, but after a while elected Dejoces to be their king. They were a brave people, and in frequent wars maintained their independence. Their country lay around Ecbatana and is now called Irak. The greatest of their kings were Phraortes and Cyaxares.

5. The kingdom of Babylon was founded by Nabonassar, but after a short time it was conquered by the Assyrians. Tiglath Pilezer founded the new kingdom of Assyria, which soon became very powerful. The Assyrians conquered Babylon and Israel ; and after several attempts against Judea, Nabuchodonosor conquered it, with Syria and Egypt. Nabuchodonosor was a very great king, but God, to punish his pride, struck him with a strange insanity not long before his death. During the long

---

Ninus? 3. Who was the last king? What happened on his death? 4. What was the first government of the Medes? Who was the first king? 5. Who founded the kingdom of Babylon? Who founded the kingdom of Assyria? What conquests did the Assyrians make? Who was their greatest king? 6. Who was the last king? By whom was he overthrown?

ended near  
me Assur  
kingdoms,  
s a great

succeeded

period of seven years, this greatest of the eastern monarchs roamed about the fields like a beast, living on the grass. On recovering his senses he recognized the power of God, and by a public decree acknowledged him as Sovereign Lord of all things.

6. Baltassar, his successor, was a wicked king. He disregarded the counsels of the prophet Daniel, whom his father had honored, and profaned the sacred vessels of the temple of Jerusalem. That very night a hand was seen writing on the walls, and the words explained by Daniel foretold the overthrow of the king. Cyaxares II, king of the Medes, and Cyrus king of Persia, were then before Babylon; during the night they entered the city, Baltassar was slain, and Babylon became a part of the Medo-Persian Empire.

7. Babylon and Niniveh were once two great cities, surrounded by immense walls, and filled with splendid buildings and gardens. The ruins of these cities still exist and show how great they were. When we see them, we feel the power of God, for while they were still great and prosperous cities like New York or London, God foretold that they should become desolate and a heap of ruins.

8. The country continued under the Persian yoke till the Saracens overthrew that empire. Then they founded at Bagdad a new empire under the Caliphs, which lasted for many years. Of these princes the greatest was Haroun-al-Raschid, noted for his military conquests, his love of letters and the fine arts. Under these princes science and learning flourished on the Euphrates more than in any other part of the world.

---

7. What does the fate of Babylon and Nineve show us? 8. Who founded a new empire near Babylon? What is the empire called? 9. Who finally overthrew the Saracen power? Who now rule the country?

9. A  
overth  
Mahom  
Since  
fallen

1. A  
of the  
united  
braced  
He was  
to their  
at last  
Persia f

2. H  
his succe  
attempte  
greatest  
very bra  
Asia.

3. So  
Great le  
last king  
Persia w

1. Who  
conquer?

9. After a long line of Caliphs their power was overthrown by the Turks, who conquered all the A. D. 1055. Mahommedan countries and extended their conquests in Europe. Since then the country has gradually sunk, and is now in a very fallen state, without any signs of its former greatness.

---

## PERSIA.

1. After the fall of Babylon, Persia became the greatest of the Asiatic kingdoms. Cyrus, on the death of Cyaxares, 538. united Media to his other provinces, so that his empire embraced all that is now Persia, Turkey in Asia and Arabia. He was a wise and good king; he permitted the Jews to return to their country and always respected their religion. He was at last killed in battle with a barbarous race who invaded Persia from the north.

2. His son Cambyses added Egypt to his empire. He and his successors lived in great pomp at Susa. One of them, Xerxes, attempted to conquer Greece, and marched against it with the greatest army that the world ever saw; but the Greeks were very brave, they defeated the Persians and drove them back to Asia.

3. Some years after the time of Xerxes, Alexander the Great led the Greeks into Persia, and conquered Darius the last king. This put an end to the first Persian monarchy. Persia was then included in the kingdom of Syria, founded by

---

1. Who founded the Persian empire? 2. What country did Cambyses conquer? What did Xerxes attempt? 3. Who overthrew the first Per-

Selencus, but the Parthians soon after entered Persia and founded a new power. Of the successors of Seleucus the most famous is Antiochus the Great, who, after conquering much of Asia, was at last defeated by the Romans.

4. Arsaces was the first Parthian king. The greatest of his successors was Mithridates who conquered the Bactrians, Persians, Medes, and much of India. His successors maintained a series of successful wars with the Romans, but some time after the Christian era the Persians revolted under Artaxares, and threw off the Parthian yoke.

5. Under these kings Christianity made great progress in Persia, in spite of the persecution of the Fire-worshippers. Sapor was one of the greatest of the Persian kings, he defeated the Roman Emperor Valerian and took him prisoner. So great was his pride that he compelled the emperor to act as his footstool whenever he wished to mount his horse.

6. His successors carried on the wars with the Romans, and in the course of them Julian the apostate, the Roman Emperor, was killed in battle. During all this time the Persian kings persecuted the Christians with great cruelty and sought in every way to destroy them.

7. The Saracens at last, under Omar, overthrew the Persian monarchy, and introducing the religion of Mahommed persecuted the Fire-worshippers as much as they had persecuted the Christians. From this time Persia formed part of the Caliphate, till it was conquered by the Turks

---

sian Monarchy? Who founded a new kingdom? 4. Who was the first Parthian king? Who founded the second kingdom of Persia? 5. What was introduced soon after? Who was the greatest of these Persian kings? 6. What Roman emperor was killed by them in battle? How did they treat the Christians? 7. Who overthrew the Persian kingdom? Who took

about  
centu  
ligion  
throu  
Kou  
and  
threw  
8.  
ruled  
much  
ment  
ancie

1.  
and  
most  
popu  
of al  
2.  
the m  
defen

Persia  
8. W  
1.  
What



about the time of the crusades. Towards the end of the fifteenth century a Persian named Sophi, of the sect of Ali, began a religious revolution by which his son Ishmael was raised to the throne. His successors, called Sophis, ruled till the time of Kouli-Khan who poisoned the last king of that line, and becoming a mighty but cruel conqueror, overthrew the empire of Delhi and India. A. D. 1739.

8. Since the time of Kouli-Khan princes of several lines have ruled in Persia, and in recent wars with Russia they have lost much of their territory. In spite of all the changes of government and religion the Persians have preserved most of their ancient habits and manners.

---

## CHINA.

1. The Chinese Empire is very large, covering all the centre and east of Asia. It consists of China, properly so called, the most wealthy and populous portion, Tartary and Thibet. The population of this empire is so great that it contains one-fourth of all the people on the globe.

2. China lies on the Pacific, and is separated from Tartary on the north by the great wall, an immense structure made for the defence of the country. This wall is fifteen hundred miles long

---

Persia from the Caliphs? Who were the Sophis? Who overthrew them?  
8. What is the history of Persia since the time of Kouli Khan?

1. What can you tell of the Chinese Empire? Of what does it consist? What is its population? 2. What separates China from Tartary? Dea-

and runs over the rivers and mountains that are on its line. China is divided into several provinces, and abounds in immense cities, canals, and other public works.

3. The Chinese are industrious, civilized and ingenious; education is much attended to, and is the only means of obtaining office. Several religions prevail, the chief being those of Confucius, Taotse and Buddha. There are some few Christians, but the great mass of the people belong to some one of these three idolatrous sects. The priests of the idols are called Bonzes and their temples Pagodas.

4. The Tartars are not as civilized as the Chinese, but are more brave and warlike, and have frequently conquered them; several of the Tartar tribes lead a wandering life and subsist by their flocks and herds. Their country is in many parts extremely cold. Thibet is a mountainous country, dependent on China, and noted as the residence of the Grand Lama, or Living Buddha, the head of the religion of Buddha, or Fo, as it is called in China. In Thibet the priests are called Lamas.

5. The Chinese Empire is traversed by three large rivers emptying into the Pacific: these are the Amour, Hoang-ho and Kiang-Ku. It is separated from Siberia by the Altai mountains, from India by the Himmalehs, and is crossed by the Kuen-lun and Celestial mountains. The chief agricultural products are rice and tea, and silk is the chief article of manufacture. Glass, powder, printing and the compass were known in China long before their invention in Europe, but in these and the arts they are now far behind us. The Chinese are noted for the extraordinary respect which they pay to their ancestors.

---

cribe the great wall. 3. What kind of people are the Chinese? 4. Describe the Tartars. 5. What can you tell us of the productions and inven-

7.  
It was  
ago,  
suppo

8.  
by all  
for w  
as Y  
of th  
caslon

9.  
A usu  
his fa  
the m  
fear c  
and a  
the us  
put hi  
and hi

10.  
that h  
press,  
that C  
march  
Kang

11.  
been p

tions of  
Yao?  
10. Wh

7. China is the oldest empire now existing on the globe. It was founded soon after the Deluge, about four thousand years ago, by Fohi, one of the nearest descendants of Noe, or as some suppose by Noe himself.

8. Yao was so great and good a king that he was beloved by all his people, and to this day they have not forgotten him, for when they wish to praise a man, they say: "He is as good as Yao." He regulated his kingdom, improved the navigation of the rivers, introduced new modes of farming, and on all occasions showed himself a father to his people.

9. The history of one of the next kings is very interesting. A usurper overthrew the reigning prince and put him and all his family to death except the Empress Min, who escaped to the mountains, and there her son Chao-Kang was born. For fear of the usurper she brought him up like a shepherd, and as she supposed no one knew about the little prince; but the usurper found it out and tried to kill him. So the Empress put him in the kitchen of a good governor as a little scullion, and his life was saved.

10. In a little while the governor, seeing the boy, suspected that he was some person of rank, and he questioned the Empress, who revealed all to him. When the good governor found that Chao-Kang was the rightful prince, he raised an army, marched against the usurper, and, defeating him, placed Chao-Kang on the throne.

11. Chao-Kang was one of the best of princes, for he had been poor and felt for his people, so that all loved him. This

---

tions of China? 7. Is China an old empire? 8. What can you tell of Yao? 9. What is the story of the Empress Min and her son Chao-Kang? 10. What did the governor do? 11. Was Chao-Kang a good prince?

family had some good kings, but some were very bad. At last one named Ku, who had a very beautiful wife committed great cruelties at her wish, so that the people drove them out and chose a new emperor. Thus we find in the history of every country, new families succeeding each other; these families are called Dynasties. Down to the present time twenty-two dynasties have reigned in China, and a new one is now about to begin.

12. Vouvang the first emperor of the next dynasty was a very great prince. He founded Corea, and Japan and the southern kingdoms were tributary to him; but after his reign these various tributary kings made war on each other, and on the emperors. The war of the tributary kings lasted five-hundred years, and almost destroyed the country: it was deluged with blood, and the people were almost all swept away by the sword, or disease, or famine, for their fields were ravaged by the armies, and their towns and villages burnt.

13. During this period some important events occurred. Confucius and Mencius the most learned men of China, endeavored to restore morality among the people. The Tartars also invaded China for the first time, and then commenced the war between them and the Chinese, which has been renewed at intervals ever since.

14. Chi-hoang-ti was the first emperor who reduced all the princes, and gave the empire its present form. He was a great monarch, but was often foolish and cruel. He defeated the Huns and Tartars, completed the great wall of China, to keep out the Tartars, and ran it over mountains,

---

Who was the last of his family? 12. What is a dynasty? How many have there been in China? What do you know of Vouvang? How long did the war of the tributary kings last? 13. What philosophers lived during this period? What people invaded China at this time? 14. Who

crossing rivers on arches. Wishing to be thought the founder of the Chinese empire, he attempted to destroy all the books and learned men. Like most tyrants he was afraid to die and spent great treasures in endeavoring to find a drink to make him immortal, but amid his folly death surprised him. It is foolish to hope to live for ever in order to offend God; if we are good, we shall be more happy to die, in order to see and enjoy God.

15. China was next for some years at war with the Huns, but the Chinese always repelled them, so that the Huns at last proceeded westward, and settled in Europe (under their King Attila), after overrunning most of it. By these wars the Chinese had become brave and warlike, and Vouti, one of their kings, was a great conqueror; he subdued many kingdoms in the north and south, and made all tributary to him as far as India.

16. Mingti who reigned some years after the coming of our Saviour, hearing that the Holy One had appeared in the west, sent an embassy to seek him, but the embassy brought back the errors of Buddha instead of the truths of Christianity. This shows that it is not enough to seek the truth with a good will, we must use great caution, and not believe every one who pretends that he has discovered the true manner of pleasing God, but adhere to those whom Christ has appointed.

17. A strange rebellion broke out in China about two hundred years after Christ. A quack pretended to cure diseases by a magical water, and got great crowds to believe him. When he saw so many deluded by the imposture, he thought it would be a very

---

reduced the empire in its present form? What are the chief events of his reign? 15. What people next made war with China? What great conqueror arose? 16. For what is the reign of Mingti famous? 17. What

good thing to be emperor instead of doctor ; so he raised an army, made all his troops wear yellow caps, and tried to overthrow the government, but he was soon defeated and his army dispersed. His partisans however formed a yellow-cap society, and frequently gave great trouble.

18. Soon after this China was divided into two empires, separated from each other by the Yang-tse-kiang, and the empire remained in this way for three-hundred years, during which China declined greatly in power and civilization owing to the frequent wars between the two parts. At last they were united again by the brave and skillful Kao-tson-venti, in 598 A. D.

A. C. 628. 19. Tait song, who came to the throne in 628 A. D. was one of the greatest emperors of China. He was wise, frugal and affable, and is regarded as the Solomon of China for his learning and wisdom. He encouraged learning, founded a college, and collected a library. In his reign ambassadors came from all surrounding nations to honor so great a monarch : and from India came Olupuen, a holy priest, who for the first time introduced Christianity into China. It extended rapidly under succeeding emperors. Churches were built in the principal cities ; and religion flourished for several centuries.

20. In the tenth century the Leao, a Tartar tribe, conquered the northern part of China, and founded a kingdom which lasted over two hundred years. At the expiration of that time the Chinese, with the help of the Nuitche Tartars, drove them out,

---

strange rebellion broke out about 200 A. C. 18. What event occurred soon after ? How long was China thus divided ? Who reunited the whole country ? 19. What was the character of Tait song ? What happened in his reign ? What was the progress of Christianity ? 20. What happened in the tenth century ? Who expelled the Leao ? Who next conquered

but th  
till th  
subdue  
ern Ch  
21.

time ;  
reign  
was in  
can fri  
other h  
there, v  
less, th  
sway o  
empero  
an imm

22. ?  
and for  
Chinese  
gols, an  
throne,  
dynasty  
canal w

23. ?  
attempt  
Fathers  
China, s  
Other m

China ?  
reign of  
dynasty s

but their own allies, the Nuitches, kept the country and held it till the time of the great Mongol conqueror, Zenghis-Khan, who subdued them, and founded the Empire of the Moguls in northern China.

21. Zenghis-Khan was one of the greatest monarchs of his time; his dominions included a great part of Asia. In the reign of his son Koublai-Khan the Roman Catholic religion was introduced into China by John de Montecorvino, a Franciscan friar, who was afterwards made archbishop of Pekin, and by other holy men. They were opposed by the Christians already there, who had embraced the errors of Nestorius, but, nevertheless, they soon made great progress. Koublai extended his sway over the southern provinces, and in 1279 the last Chinese emperor lost his life and crown in a terrible sea fight, in which an immense number perished.

22. The Moguls ruled in China for nearly a hundred years, and founded Pekin which has since been the capital. The Chinese then recovered their independence, drove out the Mongols, and a bonze, who had become a soldier, raised himself to the throne, and assuming the name of Tai-tsou, founded the Ming dynasty, which ruled for nearly two-hundred years. The great canal was built under the Mongols.

23. During the rule of the Ming dynasty St. Francis Xavier attempted to enter China, but died near Canton. In 1581 Fathers Ruggiero and Ricci, both Jesuits, began missions in China, and by their zeal and learning gained many to the faith. Other missionaries followed, and before the fall of the Ming dy-

---

China? What was Zenghis-Khan's empire? 21. What happened in the reign of Koublai-Khan? 22. How long did the Mongols reign? What dynasty succeeded? 23. What missionaries entered China under the Ming



nasty, there were Christians in the army, in the palace, and in all ranks of society, converts of the new missionaries; for all the converts of Montecorvino and the Nestorians had been driven out with the Mongols, and Ricci had to begin the work anew.

24. About the year 1600 a Tartar king invaded China, and a long war ensued, in which many bloody battles were fought and great confusion prevailed. During this state of trouble a general rebelled against the emperor and besieging him in his palace compelled him to commit suicide. Usanguey, a faithful general, commanded an army at the great wall; he invited the Tartars to aid him in punishing the usurper. The Manchoo king marched into China, defeated the rebel, but made his son Chuntche, emperor. Some princes of the Ming dynasty attempted to expel him, but they were successively defeated and Chuntche became emperor of all China in 1650.

25. Chuntche introduced the Tartar dress, but made no other changes; like his predecessors he encouraged Christian missionaries. His successor Kang-hi was one of the greatest kings of his age; under Yong-Ching the missionaries were expelled, and persecutions began against the Christians, which have been renewed from time to time ever since. Many priests and lay Christians of both sexes have been put to death, banished or deprived of their property, and not even members of the imperial family escaped; but all the efforts of tyranny failed. The Christians increased in fervor, and whenever the persecution ceased, resumed their worship as before.

26. In subsequent reigns attempts were made by Russia,

---

dynasty? 24. Who conquered China in the seventeenth century? What general called in these Tartars? And why? 25. What did Chuntche introduce? What can you tell of Kang-hi? Of Yong-King?

Holla  
out e  
at Pe  
none  
in fac  
lives.  
Engli  
of th  
great  
and C  
opene  
27.  
ed of  
the e  
vinces  
is nov  
the c  
The i  
trous  
sons i  
for s  
other  
tholic

Fohi b  
Confu

What  
How l  
land?

Holland and England to open intercourse with China, but without effect, although the Russians obtained leave to have agents at Peking. The country remained closed to Europeans till 1840, none being permitted to enter any port but Canton, and none in fact entering but courageous missionaries who often lost their lives. In 1839 the Chinese government resolved to prevent the English from introducing opium at Canton, contrary to the laws of the empire, and seized a large quantity. A war ensued; great numbers of Chinese were slaughtered by the English troops, and China yielded to England the Island of Hong-Kong, and opened four new ports.

27. After the peace of Nankin a French ambassador obtained of the Chinese government free toleration for Christianity in the empire. In 1851 a rebellion broke out in one of the provinces, and Tien-te, an assumed descendant of the Ming dynasty, is now at the head of a large army, and in possession of most of the country. In every battle the Tartars have been beaten. The insurgents restore the Chinese dress, and destroy all idolatrous temples. It is believed by some that the leaders are persons instructed by the Protestant missionaries, who have labored for some years, and especially since 1840, at Canton and the other ports, as they have already begun to persecute the Catholics.

---

### CHRONOLOGY OF CHINA.

	B. C.
Fohi began to reign (about)	2000
Confucius flourished (about)	500

---

What was the state of the Christians? 26. Who tried to trade with China? How long did its ports remain closed? What led to the war with England? 27. What did the French obtain after the peace of Nankin?

Tartars first invade China, . . . . .	A. C.
Empire united by Chi-hoang-ti, . . . . .	203
Empire again divided (about) . . . . .	300
Kaotsouventi unites it again, . . . . .	598
Christianity introduced by Olopuen, . . . . .	636
Zenghis-Khan conquers China, . . . . .	1210
China conquered by Mongols, . . . . .	1279
Chinese recover their freedom, . . . . .	1368
Christianity preached by Father Ricci, . . . . .	1581
Manchoos conquer China, . . . . .	1650
English make war on China, . . . . .	1840

## J A P A N .

1. Japan is an empire composed of several islands lying off the northern coast of China. These islands are fertile, populous, well cultivated, and abound in mineral wealth. The people resemble the Chinese in language and manners, but are a distinct, and in many respects a superior people.

2. The early history of Japan is involved in fable. The monarchy according to the best accounts was founded 660 before Christ, by Syn Mu, the first Dairi or emperor. Situated on an island they were aloof from the wars and troubles of the continent, so that, except occasional wars with Corea, its history is quite uniform. Of the sovereigns distinguished in war, one of the greatest is Singukogu, an empress who reigned in the third century of the Christian era.

- 
1. Describe Japan. 2. When was the monarchy founded, and by whom?

8. The national religion is the Sinto. Buddhism was introduced in the sixth century, in the reign of Kinmel. About the middle of the twelfth century the power of the Dairi was shaken by the dissensions of the petty kings, and in order to restore peace, Konjei, the 66th Dairi, created Joritomo, general or Ziogun. Joritomo succeeded in restoring peace, but usurped the kingly power, leaving the Dairi merely the name, and his successors for four centuries preserved this power.

4. When Genghis-Khan had conquered China his son Koublai-Khan twice invaded Japan : in the first invasion, in 1274, he was repulsed with loss, and the second armament, fitted out in 1281, was destroyed by storms, and such as escaped cut to pieces by the Japanese. After this the Mongols made no further attempt on an empire so well defended by nature.

5. In 1542, Pinto, a Portuguese was driven into Japan, and thus opened a way to intercourse with Europeans. St. Francis Xavier, in less than seven years after this, landed there to preach the gospel, and for two years labored in various parts, preparing the way for the other missionaries who followed him, and converting many by his zeal and power. Such progress did Christianity make that, in 1582, a solemn embassy was sent to Rome by the kings of Bungo and Arima, and the Prince of Omura, and the missionaries and their converts enjoyed the favor of the Emperor Nabunanga.

6. In a few years however Nabunanga was murdered, and the Ziogun Fidejos assumed the regency for his son. But soon

---

Who was one of the greatest sovereigns? 3. What religions prevail? What happened in the middle of the twelfth century? 4. Describe the Mongol attempts against Japan. 5. When did the Portuguese discover Japan? Who introduced Christianity? What was its progress? 6. What

proclaimed himself Cubo, or civil emperor, under the name of Taikosama. He ruled with great wisdom and ability, but being very hostile to Christianity began a violent persecution in 1586. This persecution was renewed at various times by his successors, and all Europeans expelled. The Dutch alone were permitted to trade and have a factory at Nangasaki.

7. In these repeated persecutions several hundred thousand Christians perished, and at last, in 1632, those in Simabara took up arms to defend their religion, and by their valor long withstood the imperial troops, and were conquered only when the Dutch besieged and took their stronghold. By this service, and by trampling on the cross, the Dutch succeeded in obtaining the privilege which they now enjoy. Since then Christianity has to all appearance become extinct, as no missionaries have been able to reach the interior. Since the exclusion of the Spanish and Portuguese, the English, Russians and Americans have at various times attempted to open commercial relations with the country, but always without effect, till the present year, 1854, when a treaty has been made with the United States.

---

## A R A B I A.

1. Arabia is a peninsula in the southwestern part of Asia, lying between the Persian Gulf and the Red Sea. The interior consists almost entirely of sandy deserts, and in no part are

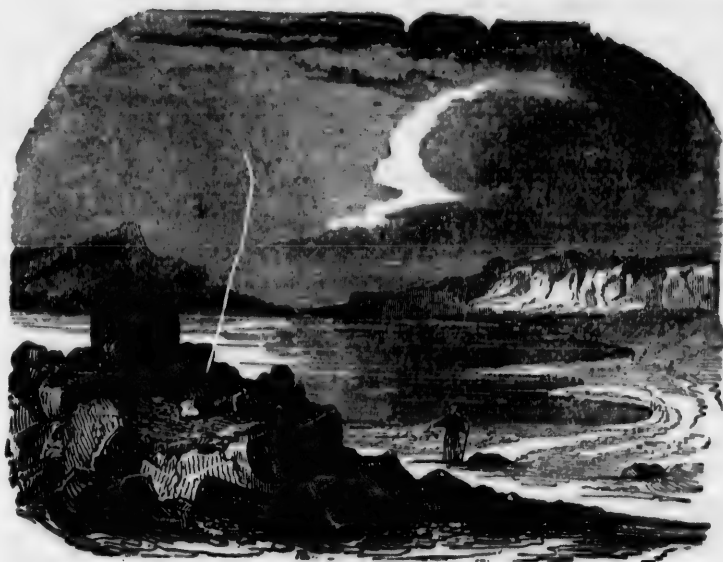
---

happened soon after? What was his treatment of the Christians? What people only were allowed to trade? 7. When did the Christians revolt? Describe the war? What can you say of the subsequent history of Japan

there  
fertile  
The  
and r  
the p  
but d  
their  
life.

2.  
chiefs  
of M

1.



The Red Sea.

there any streams that can be called rivers. There are some fertile spots on the coast, where coffee and spices are raised. The Arabs are descendants of Ishmael, a son of Abraham; and most of the tribes even now live in the same manner as the patriarchs mentioned in the Bible. They have no towns, but dwell in tents, and move from place to place, subsisting by their flocks and herds. This kind of life is called a pastoral life.

2. On the sea coast they live in towns, and are governed by chiefs and kings, some of whom are very powerful. The Imam of Muscat is the greatest of these princes: besides his own

- 
1. Describe Arabia? What are the Arabs, and how do they live?

territory he owns several ports in Persia and Africa, and his people carry on a very extensive commerce. Some years ago this Inam sent a vessel to New York, with presents for the President of the United States; and a treaty was concluded with him.

3. We know very little of the early history of Arabia. Job, who was so famous for his sufferings and patience, was an Arabian king. He is the oldest and most sublime of poets. He wrote inspired by God, and his poem shows how good and holy a man he was, serving God faithfully, although even then many of his countrymen worshipped the sun.

4. Jethro, the father-in-law of Moses, was another celebrated Arabian; he was a priest of the true God, and ruled in the land of Madian. When the Israelites passed through Arabia several tribes opposed their passage and gave them battle, but were all defeated with great loss. One of the most powerful of these were the Moabites, commanded by Balak. Balaam, a prophet, but a corrupt man, aided this king, but foretold the future glory of the Israelites, and the rise and fall of the Roman Empire. In a battle soon after, Balak and Balaam were both slain.

5. After this period we know little of the history of the Arabs. Egypt, Babylon, and Assyria, in all their glory, attempted to conquer Arabia, but the people never submitted to them. Alexander the Great conquered them, but after his death they recovered their independence, and extended the limits of their country by new conquests.

---

2. What prince rules on the southern coast? 3. What do we know of the early history of Arabia? What can you tell of Job? 4. Who was Jethro? What king opposed the Israelites? 5. What countries failed to conquer



6. Three centuries after the time of Alexander the Great, the Romans, under Pompey, tried to conquer the Arabs, and subdued some of the tribes; but the Homeyrites in Yemen and the people of Nedjed defied all the efforts of the Romans, and immortalized themselves by their successful struggle for freedom.

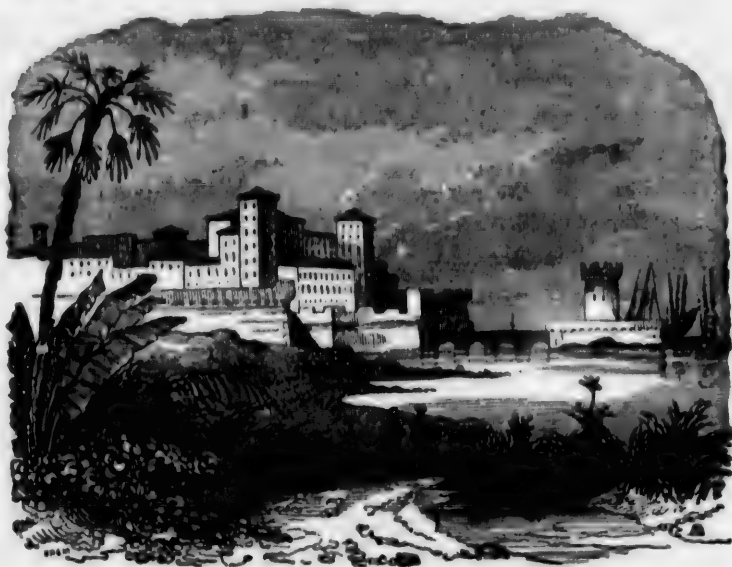
7. Arabia was one of the first countries wherein the Gospel was preached. Many became Christians, but the Jews and Pagans often persecuted them with great cruelty. The last king of the Homeyrites was a Jew, and lost his life and throne from his oppression of the Christians; for the king of Ethiopia, indignant at his cruelty, marched against the tyrant, and defeated him in a battle, in which he lost his life. This was about 500 A. C.

8. About a hundred years after this, a strange revolution took place in Arabia. As we have seen, there were many Jews and Christians in the country, but the majority were idolaters, and most of them worshipped with great reverence the Kaaba, a black, shapeless stone at Mecca. A cunning man, named Mahomet, with the help of a Jew and a Christian, drew up a book, and announced himself as a prophet from God; but the people of Mecca, where he began to preach his new religion, refused to hear it. They drove him out, and he fled to Medina. This event is called the Hegira; it took place 622 A. C., and from it all Mahommedans reckon time, as we do from the birth of Christ.

---

Arabia? Who at last subdued them? 6. What Roman general conquered a part? Who maintained their independence? 7. What can you tell of religion in Arabia? Where were the Christians persecuted? 8. What religion prevailed? What impostor preached a new religion? What is the

9. Having been joined by powerful friends at Medina, Mahomet raised an army, returned in triumph to Mecca, was acknowledged as king, and soon conquered all Arabia and Syria, establishing wherever he went his new religion, an impious mixture of Christianity, Judaism, and Idolatry. His doctrines were contained in a book called the Koran, and to those whom he conquered he gave no choice, but the Koran or the sword. In the midst of his prosperity he died, having succeeded as no other impostor had ever done.



Muscat, on the Persian Gulf

10. On the death of Mahomet, a contest for the sovereignty arose between Abubeker, his father-in-law, and Ali, his son-in-

---

Hegira and when did it happen? 9. What success had Mahomet? What is the Koran? 10. What happened in Mahomet's death? What two sects

law, a  
two s  
now c  
beker  
Mahom  
caliph  
cessor  
Turke  
Othm  
was m

11.  
name  
of the  
the se  
venion  
in a v  
had r  
pelled  
tians v  
saw m  
ries, a  
little  
Empir

12.  
remain  
the me  
talents

arose?  
the des  
Mahom

law, and the followers of the impostor became divided into two sects which still subsist. The Sheas favored Ali, and are now chiefly to be found in Persia; the Sonnites favored Abubeker and embrace the great majority of the Moslems, as the Mahommedans are also called. Abubeker was made king or caliph: he defeated the Greek emperor, and Omar, his successor, a still greater warrior, conquered nearly all that is now Turkey in Asia, Persia, Egypt, and all the north of Africa. Othman, the next caliph, added Tartary to the empire, which was now one of the greatest in the world.

11. On the death of Othman, Ali was at last elected. His name is still revered in the east as one of the best and bravest of the caliphs. His reign was short but glorious. He removed the seat of his empire to Cuja on the Euphrates, as a more convenient place. Thus was the religion of Mahomet established in a vast territory by a judgment of God. Pagan nations who had refused the mild doctrines of the Gospel, were now compelled to embrace the Koran or be put to the sword. Christians who had fallen into heresy and separated from the church, saw mosques rising on the ruins of their churches and monasteries, and their land filled with blood and misery, so that in a little while scarce a Christian could be found in the Saracen Empire.

12. Almansor, a subsequent caliph, built Bagdad, and it remained the capital till the caliphate expired. It was one of the most splendid cities of the east. Almansor was a man of talents and education; he encouraged learning and the arts.

---

arose? What is the difference between them? 11. Who was elected on the death? Where did he remove the seat of empire? How was the Mahommedan religion finally established? 12. Who built Bagdad and

His successors followed his example, and the Saracens soon became the most learned and polished of all nations; and the seats of the caliphs of Bagdad and Cordova in Spain became the best schools of astronomy, medicine, philosophy, and mathematics; while in the manufacture of all articles of superior beauty, ingenuity or finish, the Saracens were unsurpassed. The figures we now use in calculation came to us from the Arabs.

13. The greatest of subsequent caliphs was Haroun-al-raschid, a famous prince and patron of letters. His name is celebrated in Arabian literature which attained its highest perfection in his reign. His valor, equity, impartiality, and attention to his duties are described in many of their works. Like many of the caliphs, he attacked the Greek Empire, but none of them succeeded in conquering any part of Europe.

14. The caliphate had now declined. Spain, Egypt, Morocco, and India, had their own sovereigns, who were only nominally subject to the caliph of Bagdad. Among later caliphs, Mahmoud of Ghaznee was one of the greatest; he conquered India, and reared a new empire, which did not however long subsist. At last Bagdad, after being for nearly five hundred years the seat of the Saracen Empire, was taken in 1258 by Hulaku, a grandson of Genghis-khan. Mostasem, the caliph, was put to death, by being dragged around the streets in a leather sack, and the empire of the Arabs or Saracens entirely overthrown.

15. Under the later caliphs Arabia became divided into a

---

removed the caliphate to it? What did the Saracens now become? 13.

Who was the greatest of subsequent caliphs? What was his character?

14. What occurred soon after? Who was Mahomoud of Ghaznee? Who

numbe  
time.  
for a  
power  
medan  
Medin  
every

1. A  
it, to t  
which  
spect,  
nearest  
tion a  
petty l  
ing ab

2. T  
and wi  
the sou  
who ra  
dead o

conquer  
of the c

1. WI

number of small states, and has remained so till the present time. In the last century a sect, called Wahabees, arose, and for a time ruled a considerable part of the country, but their power has now ceased. Arabia is still the centre of Mahomedanism, and Mecca, the birth place of the false prophet, and Medina, his burial place, are celebrated pilgrimages, which every strict Mussulman tries to visit once in his life.

---

## TARTARY.

1. All the interior of Asia, from China and the Pacific above it, to the Caspian Sea, is called Tartary, and the various tribes which inhabit it, though differing from each other in many respects, are all known to us by the name of Tartars. Those nearest Europe reside in cities, and are far advanced in civilization and the arts. They are independent and form several petty kingdoms. East of this they lead a pastoral life, roaming about with their flocks and herds, and are subject to China.

2. The Tartars have at various times issued from their country and with terrible armies overrun rich and populous regions to the south, east and west. The Scythians were a Tartar tribe who ravaged Persia, and defeated Cyrus the great, leaving him dead on the field. Darius invaded their country, but unable to

---

conquered Bagdad? 15. What is the history of Arabia since the fall of the caliphates? Who were the Wahabees?

1. What is Tartary? Describe the Tartars? 2. What have the Tar-

follow them over their plains, returned with but a small portion of his force.

3. The Huns are another Tartar race : after several attempts to conquer China, in which they were constantly defeated they turned westward and settled on the Black Sea. In 442, under Attila, they invaded the Greek Empire, and turning westward, carried the terror of their arms from the walls of Constantinople to the Bay of Biscay. They were defeated however by the Franks, and falling back, ravaged northern Italy till Attila's death. They then dispersed, and a few settling in Hungary gave it its present name.

4. The Mongols are another Tartar tribe, who still occupy the part called Mongolia. In the thirteenth century Temujin overthrew Ouangkhan, or Prester John, and acquiring a dominion over several tribes, assumed the title of Genghis-Khan or King of Kings. He now resolved to conquer the world, and began by invading China. He subdued the northern part and established a new empire there. Soon after, the massacre of his ambassadors gave him a pretext for invading Persia. Mahommed, the King of Corasmea, raised a large army to defend the country, but was defeated, and Persia fell into the hands of the Mongols. The conquerer soon after died.

5. The death of Genghis-Khan did not ruin the cause of the Mongols; they reduced all China, and conquered India, under Octai. Batukan invaded Europe, and swept like a torrent over Russia, Poland and Hungary, while Hulaku stormed

---

tars often done? Who were the Scythians? 3. Who were the Huns? When did they invade the Greek Empire? How far did they extend their conquest? 4. Who are the Mongols? What great mongol conqueror arose in the thirteenth century? What countries did he subdue? 5. What

Bagda  
was r  
Empir

6.  
the C  
formic  
Minor  
Altho  
speak  
key in  
after  
ducin  
are c  
this d

7. T  
the M  
under  
conqu  
the co  
soner.  
were  
for an  
splend  
conqu  
8. T  
conqu

were th  
did the  
7. Who  
What

Bagdad, and put an end to the Empire of the Caliphs. He was repulsed by the sultans of Egypt and Syria, but the Empire of the Moguls was long maintained.

6. The Turks were another Tartar race, descendants from the Corasmeans. In the fourteenth century they too became formidable, and under Othman founded a kingdom in Asia Minor, the part of Turkey in Asia, lying under the Black Sea. Although conquered by Tamerlane, of whom we shall soon speak, they quickly recovered, subdued all that is now called Turkey in Asia, overthrew the Greek Empire in 1453, and soon after reduced Egypt and all northern Africa, everywhere introducing or supporting the Mahomedan religion. Their kings are called sultans, and reside at Constantinople in Europe to this day.

7. The Usbecks were another tribe of Tartars, connected with the Moguls. They rose to power in the fourteenth century, under Temour-bek or Tamerlane, the most cruel of all their conquerors. He was Khan of Samarcand: he first invaded the country of the Turks, and defeating Bajazet took him prisoner. Syria was next overrun, Persia and Northern India were then deluged in blood. Their empire in India alone stood for any length of time, and was in after years renowned for its splendor and power. Tamerlane died while marching to the conquest of China.

8. The Manchoos are another Tartar tribe, who after several conquests invaded China, in the seventeenth century, overthrew

---

were the conquests of his successors? 6. Who are the Turks? Where did they found an empire? When did they overthrow the Greek Empire? 7. Who were the Usbecks? What great conqueror did they produce? What conquest did Tamerlane effect? 8. Who are the Manchoos?



the Ming dynasty, and to this time are the ruling race in that empire. At this moment the Chinese have risen, and are endeavoring to expel the Manchooks.

9. When China passed under the yoke of the Manchooks, the other Tartar tribes were soon subdued, and Tartary has since then formed part of the Chinese Empire, except a few states in the west which preserved their independence.

## SIBERIA.

1. Siberia is a cold country lying north of Tartary. It is washed on the north by the Arctic Ocean, and is separated from Europe by the Ural Mountains. The inhabitants resemble the Tartars, but are not so brave or enterprising. About two hundred years ago, a robber fled from Russia to Siberia to escape the officers of justice. Here, by degrees, he attained great power, and having raised a considerable army, he subdued the whole country.

2. When he had thus established his power, he made it a means of obtaining a pardon from the Emperor of Russia for his former crimes. In this way, most of northern Asia passed to the Russians, who gradually extended their power to Kamchatka, and even into America. Siberia has since been used by the czars as a place of exile, and here they send all who dis-

What country did they conquer? 9. Since then who rules Tartary?

1. Describe Siberia. How did it become a Russian province?
2. What did he do on obtaining power? How does Russia use Siberia?

pleas  
were  
dom  
Gree  
desce

1.  
maleh  
pooter  
Grain  
spices,  
black,  
indoler  
are ver  
Among  
mercha  
can m  
caste.

2. I  
portion  
obscuri  
discover  
before

1. Des  
religion  
traded

please them. When Poland was seized by Russia, thousands were sent to this desolate country because they preferred freedom and the Catholic religion to Russian despotism and the Greek schism. Many of the present inhabitants of Siberia are descended from these exiles.

---

## HINDOSTAN, OR INDIA.

1. Hindostan is a large peninsula, lying south of the Himalah Mountains, and chiefly between the Indus and Burram-pooter. It is a fertile, well watered, and populous country. Grain of all kinds, sugar, cotton, indigo, exquisite fruits and spices, are here raised in abundance. The Hindoos are nearly black, but have none of the negro features. They are an indolent race, and easily submit to oppression. Their customs are very peculiar, and they adhere to them with great fidelity. Among these is the division into four castes—priests, soldiers, merchants and farmers, which are kept so distinct that no one can marry or even eat and drink with a person of another caste. The religion is the worship of Brahma and other gods.

2. India was one of the first settled and earliest civilized portions of the globe. Its history, at first, is involved in much obscurity, and the fables of the Brahmins give no assistance in discovering the truth. Solomon traded here a thousand years before the Christian era. Alexander the Great invaded the

---

1. Describe Hindostan. How are the people divided? What is the religion? 2. What can you say of the early history of India? Who traded to India? What Indian king was conquered by Alexander?

northern part and defeated Porus, King of the Punjaub, but reinstated him in his kingdom.

3. Soon after the time of Alexander, Chandragupta founded a Hindoo Empire, over which his dynasty ruled for several centuries. Of succeeding kings, the most famous is the warlike Vicramaditya, who flourished about the time of Julius Cæsar, (56 B. C.) From this time no important event occurs for several centuries. The country was divided into several states, and these were generally at peace.

4. The rise of the Mohammedan power soon threatened India, but it was not invaded till towards the close of the tenth century, when Mahmood of Ghaznee, in the present Afghanistan, assembled a large army, and entered Northern India, putting all to fire and sword. His cruelties are still remembered in the country. He founded the Kingdom of Lahore, which lasted for a considerable time.

5. In 1187, another chieftain, Mahommed Ghore, seized Lahore, and extending his conquests, founded the Empire of Delhi. His son raised it to its greatest splendor and power, having repeatedly repulsed the Moguls, who attempted to effect the conquest of India.

6. In 1400, the celebrated Tamerlane invaded Hindostan, conquered Delhi, and ravaging the country, made the finest provinces complete deserts. After his departure, the country was ruled by Afghan monarchs till 1525, when Ibrahim, the

---

3. Who founded a great Hindoo Empire? What famous warrior flourished about the time of Cæsar? 4. What Mahommedan conquered the north? What kingdom did he found? 5. Who overthrew this empire and founded that of Delhi? 6. Who invaded India in 1400? What people next ruled? Who founded the Empire of the

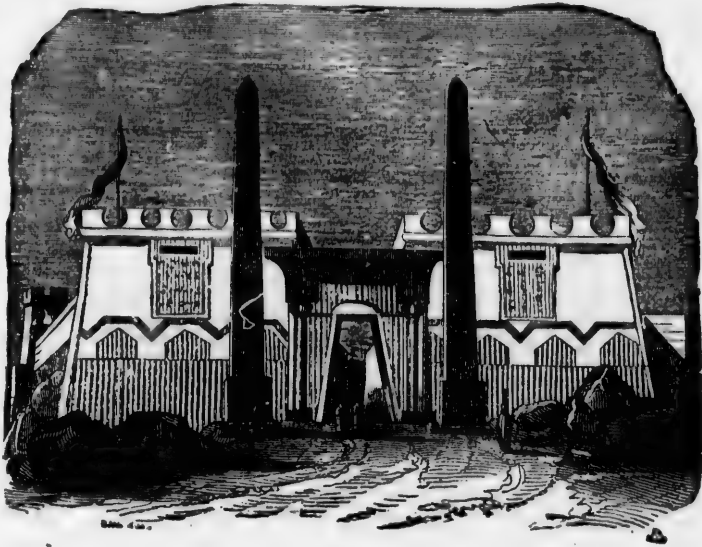
last  
ant  
call  
7  
The  
a lo

after  
duce  
aries.

great  
can y

last of the line, was defeated and killed by Baber, a descendant of Tamerlane, who founded a new empire, commonly called the Empire of the Great Mogul.

7. Several of the succeeding emperors were great men. There was Akbar, who took the Hindoo city of Chaitur, after a long siege, and conquered nearly all Northern India. He



Lahore.

afterwards embraced Christianity, and was preparing to introduce it, when his death destroyed all the hopes of the missionaries. There was Jehanghir, whose love for Nourmahal led

---

great Mogul? 7. What great conqueror embraced Christianity? What can you tell of Jehanghir and Aurungzebe? Who finally took the

him into much trouble with his family. There was Aurungzebe, a cruel and bigoted tyrant, who, in a long reign, subdued nearly all India. After his time, however, their power declined, and the English took possession of their territory.

8. While the descendants of Tamerlane were founding an empire in the north, the Portuguese attempted to establish one in the south. About 1500, Albuquerque occupied Goa, and soon, by his wise policy, made it a flourishing city. Subsequent governors extended the Portuguese power over a considerable portion of the coast and the neighboring islands. During their time, St. Francis Xavier arrived, and with other missionaries, established missions in India and Ceylon, which exist to this day in spite of the persecutions of Mohammedans, Hindoos, English and Dutch.

9. These missionaries spared no toil or suffering to convert the people. They joined the various castes, instructed all, and after grounding them in the truth and detaching their hearts from idolatry, baptized them. Besides St. Francis, the greatest were Nobili, who began the Madura mission; and to gain access to the Brahmins assumed the dress and life of a Saniassi, and the Blessed John de Britto, who, like many others, was put to death.

10. As the Portuguese power declined, the English and French entered Hindostan. The English soon acquired

---

territories of these emperors? 8. What Europeans first formed a colony in India? What good governor occupied Goa? What holy man preached in India? Where are the descendants of his converts to be found? 9. What can you tell us of these missionaries? Who were the greatest? 10. What two nations followed the Portuguese? Which finally acquired the ascendancy? 11. Who took Ceylon from the Portu-

Bomb  
India  
count  
Both  
tests  
Fran  
also  
Lally  
11.  
enjoy  
their  
who  
gaine  
bribe  
met v  
Of la  
ghani  
acqui

1.  
mann  
India

gues  
of the

1. I

Bombay, Madras and Calcutta, and formed the great East India Company, which still possesses supreme authority in the country. The French began their settlements at Pondicherry. Both endeavored to extend their power by favoring the contests of Hindoo princes; but in the war between England and France, in which France lost her American possessions, she also was deprived of her power in India, although General Lally did all that man could do to overthrow the English.

11. The Dutch took Ceylon from the Portuguese, but never enjoyed the good will of the people, whom they oppressed for their religion. It also passed into the hands of the English, who are now undisturbed masters of India. By degrees they gained possession of state after state, by war, treachery, bribery, or fraud. The most formidable opponents whom they met were Hyder Ali, Sultan of the Mysore, and Tippoo Saib. Of late years, they have subdued the Sikhs, conquered Afghanistan, wrested several provinces from the Birmans and acquired Malacca.

---

### FARTHER INDIA.

1. Beyond the Bay of Bengal lie several states of similiar manners and customs, which taken together are called Farther India. These states are the Birman Empire, the King-

---

guese? Who took it from the Dutch? Who was the great opponent of the English? How have the English extended their power?

1. Describe Farther India. 2. What can you tell of its history?



Scene in Farther India.

dom of Siam, and the Empire of Anam. Anam embraces Tonquin and Cochin China. All these countries are populous and fertile; the governments are despotic, and the religion idolatry—the people being worshippers of Buddha, here called Gaudama.

2. Very little is known of the history of these countries. Birmah has been deprived of much of her territory by the

---

What empire arose in the last century? What progress has Christianity made?

En  
Ch  
ag  
par  
ag  
we  
mis  
Pro  
Ba

Solo  
Alex  
Vier

Mahr  
Mah  
Tame  
Port  
Babe  
Engl  
Dutch  
Auru  
Nader  
Pond  
Hyde  
Engl  
“  
“



English. The Empire of Anam arose in the last century. Christianity was introduced into Tonquin, two hundred years ago, by Father Rhodes; and there are many Christians in all parts of Anam. Cruel persecutions have been carried on against them; and within a few years many priests and people were put to death. An American ship rescued some Catholic missionaries a few years ago. Within the last thirty years, Protestant missionaries have begun to labor at Malacca and Bankok.

### CHRONOLOGY OF INDIA.

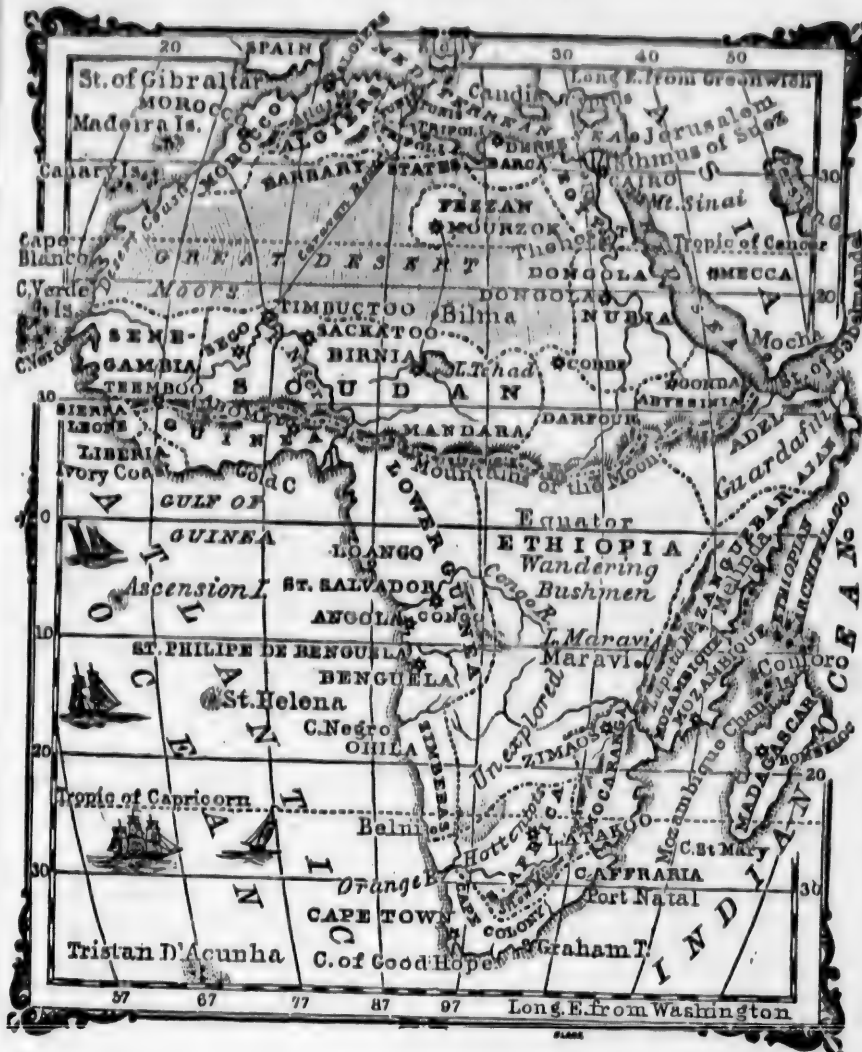
Solomon traded to India,	B. C.
Alexander conquers India,	1000
Vicramaditya reigned,	330
	56
Mahmoud of Ghaznee conquers India about	A. D.
Mahommed Ghore conquers India,	1000
Tamerlane conquers India,	1187
Portuguese reach India,	1400
Baber founds the Empire of the Great Mogul,	1498
English East India Company began in	1525
Dutch take Ceylon,	1600
Aurangzebe began to reign,	1632
Nader Shah invaded India,	1660
Pondicherry taken by the English,	1739
Hyder Ali begins his war,	1761
English take Ceylon,	1779
" attack Burmah,	1795
" " Afghanistan,	1825
	1839

## GENERAL CHRONOLOGY OF ASIA.

	B. C.
Babylon and Niniveh founded, about . . . . .	2250
China founded, . . . . .	2245
Semiramis reigns, . . . . .	1250
Abraham called, . . . . .	1917
Israelites leave Egypt, . . . . .	1728
Troy destroyed, . . . . .	1184
The city of Tyre founded, . . . . .	1252
Asia conquered by Sesostris, . . . . .	1485
Jewish monarchy, . . . . .	1095
Japanese monarchy, . . . . .	660
Niniveh destroyed, . . . . .	626
Beginning of the Babylonian captivity, . . . . .	606
Cyrus begins to reign in Persia, . . . . .	536
Alexander conquers Asia, . . . . .	331
Chihhoangti unites all China, . . . . .	208
Vicramaditya rules in India, . . . . .	56
	A. D.
Destruction of Jerusalem, . . . . .	70
Kingdom of Persia founded, . . . . .	226
Huns invade Europe, . . . . .	442
China united under Kaotsouventi, . . . . .	598
Mahomet begins to preach, . . . . .	622
Persia conquered by Saracens, . . . . .	641
Power of Dairi ends in Japan, . . . . .	1150
Genghis Khan conquers China, . . . . .	1229
Saracen Empire ends, . . . . .	1258
Tamerlane flourishes, . . . . .	1376
Portuguese in India, . . . . .	1497
Mogul Empire founded, . . . . .	1520
Xavier in India and Japan, . . . . .	1523
English power in India, . . . . .	1600
Christianity destroyed in Japan, . . . . .	1632
Tartars take China, . . . . .	1650
English conquer most of India by . . . . .	1800
English attack China, . . . . .	1840



B. C.  
2260  
2245 1250  
1917  
1728  
1184  
1252  
1485  
1095  
660  
626  
608  
536  
331  
208  
56  
A. D.  
70  
226  
442  
598  
622  
641  
1150  
1229  
1258  
1876  
1497  
1520  
1522  
1600  
1632  
1650  
1800  
1840



# QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF AFRICA.

1. Bound Africa.
  2. What ocean on the west? On the east? What sea on the north?  
On the north-west?
  3. What desert in the north? What four ranges of mountains in Africa? A, M, S, L.
  4. What two large rivers? What two small ones?
  5. What isthmus in the north-east? What straits in the east? What lake in the centre?
  6. Where are the Barbary States? Name them. Which is the most easterly? *Ans.* Barca. Which the most westerly? Where is Egypt?
  7. What other countries lie on the Red Sea?
  8. Where is Soudan? Senegambia? Guinea?
  9. What colony lies in the south? What cape in this colony?  
Where are Mozambique and Zanguebar?
  10. What large island near Mozambique?
  11. In what country is Cairo? Dongola? Derne? Morocco? Capetown? Gondar? Tunis? Tripoli? Mozambique? Melinda?
  12. Between what countries are the straits of Gibraltar? the straits of Babelmaudel? the isthmus of Suez? the Red Sea?
  13. Where is Cape Verde? Cape Guardafui? Cape of Good Hope? Cape St. Mary?
  14. Where is Sahara, or the Great Desert? Lake Tchad? Sierra Leone?
- 

Q.  
A.  
the e  
Q.  
A.  
Sea,  
Atlan  
Q.



### GEOGRAPHY OF AFRICA.

**Q.** In what part of the eastern continent is Africa?

**A.** Africa is a large peninsula in the south-western part of the eastern continent.

**Q.** How is Africa bounded?

**A.** Africa is bounded on the north by the Mediterranean Sea, east by the Red Sea and the Indian Ocean, west by the Atlantic.

**Q.** What are the striking natural features of Africa?

A. The striking natural features of Africa are its lofty mountains running from east to west, namely: the Atlas Mountains in the north, the Mountains of the Moon in the middle, and the Snow Mountains in the south; the great Desert of Sahara, and the great want of streams and rivers.

Q. Are there no large rivers?

A. There are only two large rivers, the Nile and the Niger, which fertilize the countries which they traverse, but much of the country is sterile.

Q. What are the animals of Africa?

A. The animals of Africa generally resemble those of Asia, the Rhinoceros, Hippopotamus, Giraffe, and Zebra are however peculiar to Africa, as well as the Ostrich and several kinds of birds.

Q. What is the character of the people?

A. The inhabitants, except along the Mediterranean, are black, and are called negroes. They are all very barbarous, and we know little of their history. Those in the north were more civilized, and their early history is very interesting. This contains Egypt and the Barbary States.

Q. Why is it better to take up the History of Africa next?

A. It is well to take up the history of Africa next, because Egypt was one of the oldest kingdoms of which we have any certain history, and contains remarkable monuments, which were erected many centuries ago, making it one of the most interesting countries in the world.

Q. What are the most remarkable countries in Africa?

A. Africa, as now divided, contains on the north-east Egypt, next to it Barca, Tripoli, Tunis, which are all independent states; Algiers, a French colony, and the Empire of Morocco. These countries all lie on the Mediterranean, between the Atlantic and

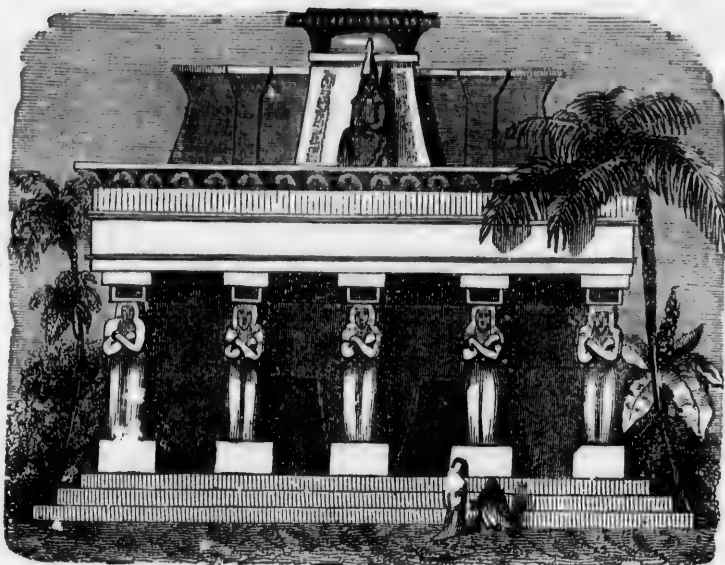
the Red Sea. South of Egypt are Nubia and Abyssinia, formerly called Ethiopia. On the Atlantic lie Senegambia and Guinea, in the interior Soudan, but all this country down to the English colony, at the Cape of Good Hope, is cut up into small states, or inhabited by roving tribes.

*Q.* What is the condition of the people?

*A.* The people in the north are Mahomedans and are somewhat civilized, though far inferior to their Saracen ancestors. The Abyssinians are Christians, but have many barbarous customs; in other parts the people are savage, and idolatry in its most terrible shape universally prevails.

---





Tombs at Thebes.

## EGYPT.

1. Egypt is a beautiful valley, watered by the river Nile, which spreads fertility over all the country. It has always been noted for its productiveness, and from time immemorial exported grain to other countries. The Nile every year overflows its banks, and leaves a fertilizing mud, from which the people raise their crops. The country, where not inundated, is a desert. The Nile empties into the Mediterranean by several

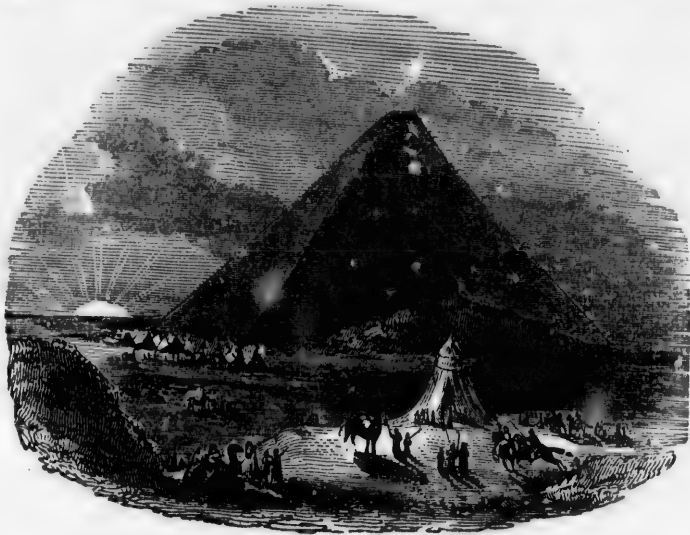
---

1. Describe Egypt. What is its great river? What is the Delta?

2. What

mouths, the two largest of which form a triangle like the Greek letter delta, and the mouth of any such river is now called a delta.

2. Egypt contains many magnificent ruins and ancient monuments. The most remarkable are the pyramids, immense structures, regarded as one of the wonders of the world; the sphynx, the tombs at Luxor, and temples found in various parts.



View of the Pyramids.

3. In the pyramids have been found mummies, or embalmed bodies of kings, queens, and persons of every rank, with ornaments, and scrolls describing their character, also mummies of the various beasts and birds adored as gods by the ancient Egyptians. On the walls of the tombs have recently been

---

2. What does Egypt contain? 3. What have been found in the pyramids?

found paintings showing the battles and wars of the ancient Egyptians; and what is more interesting, their domestic life, men and women at work in their houses, shops, and fields; children at school or playing, the service in the temples, marriages, funerals, with all their various customs.

4. Egypt was one of the first kingdoms in the world. It was founded by Misraim, a grandson of Noe, who built the city of Memphis, soon after the dispersion of Babel. Of subsequent kings we know little down to the time of Suphis, or Cheops, who built the great pyramid. He, and the other kings who built pyramids, became odious, as they oppressed the people in order to erect those immense monuments.

5. Some time after the erection of the pyramids, a pastoral tribe from Arabia, commanded by Salatis, conquered Egypt. Salatis and his successors are known in history as the Shepherd Kings or Hyksos; they oppressed the Egyptians, who frequently rebelled, established a new kingdom at Thebes, and at last, under Thothmes I., drove out the Hyksos and their Arab followers, who retired to Syria and founded a kingdom there. It was during the time of the Shepherd Kings that Jacob and his family came to Egypt.

6. After the expulsion of the Shepherd Kings, Egypt was governed by warlike princes, who carried their arms to the Euphrates, and to the borders of the Caspian Sea. The greatest of these was Rameses III., or Sesostris, who conquered the Bactrians, Medes, Persians, all Asia Minor, and even crossed

---

What have been discovered in the tombs? 4. By whom was the kingdom of Egypt founded? Who built the first pyramid? 5. What people conquered Egypt? Where did the Egyptians found a new kingdom? 6. What great conqueror did Egypt produce? What were his con-

into  
his  
am  
she  
tre  
7  
Goe  
the  
pla  
dep  
ove  
8  
this  
Jeru  
Eth  
whic  
Psa  
Neel  
Bab  
9.  
conq  
a hu  
coun  
again  
was  
  
quest  
arose  
Who  
B. C.  
conqu

into Europe; while in Africa, he added Libya and Ethiopia to his dominions. All his bloody wars served only to gratify his ambition; his conquests were soon lost, and Egypt found that she had shed the blood of her best soldiers, and wasted her treasures for a wicked man.

7. Soon after this, the kings oppressed the Israelites so that God raised up Moses to deliver them; and, in consequence of the obstinacy of the king, visited Egypt with every species of plague, by which the country was made desolate. After the departure of the Israelites, the king pursued them, but was overwhelmed with his immense army in the Red Sea.

8. About 970 B. C., another conqueror arose in Egypt; this was Sesonchis or Sesak, who aided Jeroboam, and took Jerusalem. Soon after Egypt was itself conquered by the Ethiopians, and for a long time was divided into several states, which frequently made war on each other. At last, in 670 B. C., Psammenitus made himself king of all Egypt. His son, Necho, was a warrior; he conquered the Jews; attacked Babylon, but was defeated by Nabuchodonosor.

9. In the reign of Psammenitus, 526 B. C., the Persians conquered the country, and kept possession of it for more than a hundred years. Amyrtaeus, an Egyptian, then freed his country from the Persian yoke; but, in 350, the Persians again reduced it, and kept it as a province till their own empire was overthrown a few years after by Alexander the Great.

---

quests? 7. What was the treatment of the Jews? 8. What conqueror arose in Egypt about 970 B. C.? Who soon after conquered Egypt? Who was the first of Egypt after this? 9. Who conquered in 526 B. C.? Who delivered his country? When did the Persians reconquer it? Who next subdued it? 10. What family next ruled it?

10. On the death of Alexander, the country was given to Ptolemy, his half-brother, who began the Grecian dynasty 323 B. C. The first Ptolemies were warlike sovereigns and



Arabs Traveling.

extended their power; but they became tyrannical; civil dissensions arose, and Ptolemy XI., at last, left his throne to the Romans. The family of the Ptolemies continued to reign under the Romans, till the time of Cleopatra, a queen famous

---

Who was the last of the Ptolemies? Who then became masters

for  
and  
who  
ous  
gove

11  
Alex  
imme  
men  
the

12  
idola  
wors  
kind  
when  
Gree  
after  
tered  
old t  
decli

13  
was  
Chur  
no c  
the f  
teries  
Orige  
were

of Eg  
12. W

for her beauty and learning. In the contest between Anthony and Augustus for the Roman Empire, she joined Anthony, whom she loved, and on his death, killed herself with a poisonous snake. Egypt then became a Roman province and was governed by a pro-consul. 31 B. C.

11. Egypt had gained much under the Ptolemies, who built Alexandria, encouraged learning and the arts, and collected immense libraries. By order of one of them, the Old Testament was translated into Greek; and this version, now called the Septuagint, was that used by our Saviour and his Apostles.

12. The original religion of the Egyptians was the grossest idolatry; their chief gods were Isis and Osiris; but they also worshipped many others, and paid divine honors to several kinds of animals, reptiles and birds, which received adoration when alive, and sumptuous funerals after death. The Persians, Greeks and Romans, introduced some of their ideas; but soon after the country became a Roman province, our Saviour entered Egypt, flying from king Herod. Then, according to an old tradition, the idols all fell down; and from that time idolatry declined.

13. Egypt was one of the first countries where the gospel was preached, and was long the most fervent part of the Church. In spite of persecution, truth at last triumphed, and no country produced more illustrious saints. Here St. Paul, the first hermit, founded the solitary life; St. Anthony, monasteries for monks; and St. Syncletica, convents for nuns. Origen, St. Athanasius, and many other illustrious fathers were Egyptians.

---

of Egypt? 11. What was the state of Egypt under the Ptolemies? 12. What was the religion of the Egyptians? 13. What was the pro-



Cairo.

14. When Mahomet founded the Saracen power, Egypt soon fell. Omar conquered it in 635, and destroyed churches, monasteries and libraries. As the power of the Bagdad caliphs declined, Egypt was governed by its own caliphs at Cairo, till it was conquered by Nouredin, the first sultan. The greatest of his successors was Saladin, who led the Mahomedans against the Crusaders in the twelfth century, and founded the celebrated body of soldiers called Mamelukes, who down to the present century were the ruling power in Egypt.

---

gress of Christianity in Egypt? 14. Who conquered Egypt in the

tha  
151  
the  
inte  
Bon  
eat  
this  
to m  
and  
mad  
at la  
Turk  
Egy  
unde

1.  
below  
ruins  
times  
2.  
partl

sevent  
quered  
govern  
1. I



15. When the Turks founded their empire and subdued all that is now Turkey, they overthrew the Saracens in Egypt in 1517, and since then Egypt has been governed by pachas under the Turkish sultan, and its history presents few matters of interest. In 1798, it was invaded by the French, under Bonaparte, who soon conquered the country, but was restored to the Turks by the victories of the English. After this, Mehemet Ali massacred the Mamelukes, and endeavored to make Egypt independent. He was a man of great ability and did much to elevate and improve his people. In 1831, he made war on the sultan and attempted to take Syria, but was at last driven back by the united armies of England, Austria and Turkey in 1839. By a treaty signed at London in 1841, Egypt was guaranteed to Mehemet Ali and his descendants, under the title of pachas.

## NUBIA AND ABYSSINIA.

1. Nubia is a country on the Red Sea, lying immediately below Egypt, and like it watered by the Nile. It abounds in ruins of ancient cities and temples, and has been at various times, and is now, subject to Egypt.

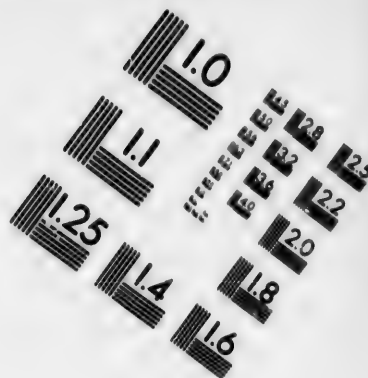
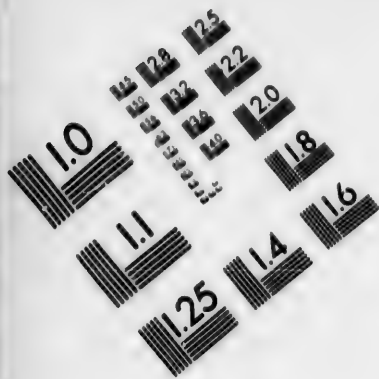
2. South of Nubia lies Abyssinia, a mountainous country, partly inhabited by the Gallas, a savage tribe, and partly by

---

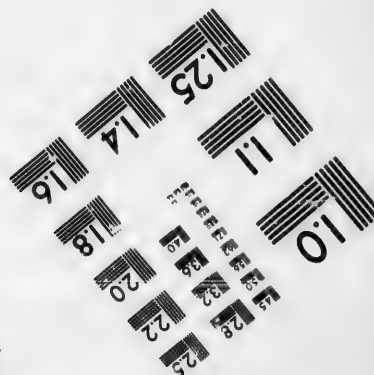
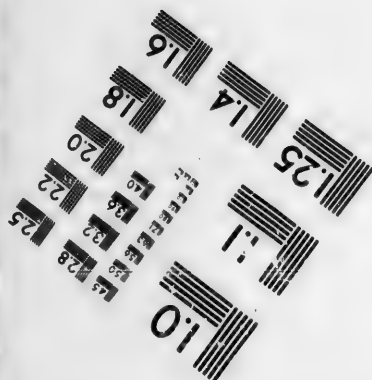
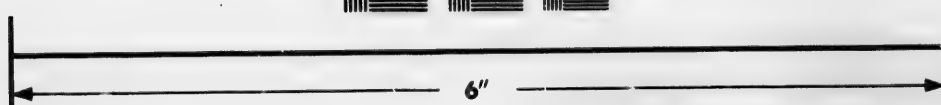
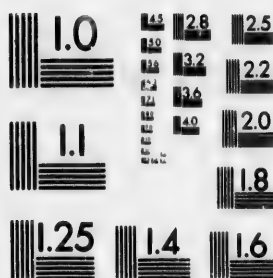
seventh century? What great caliphs ruled Egypt? 15. Who conquered Egypt in 1517? Who invaded it in 1798? What great Pacha governed it till within a few years?

1. Describe Nubia. 2. Describe Abyssinia. 3. What was Ethiopia





# **IMAGE EVALUATION TEST TARGET (MT-3)**



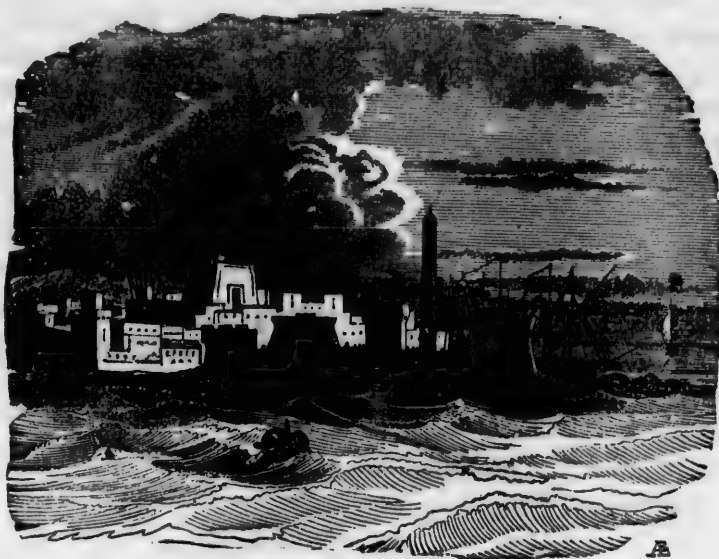
**Photographic  
Sciences  
Corporation**

23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503

18  
20  
22  
25

10  
01

the Abyssinians, who are Christians, but almost as savage as any other African tribe. Both Nubia and Abyssinia were formerly called Ethiopia.



Fort on the Red Sea.

3. Ethiopia was in ancient times a civilized and enlightened country. Its kings conquered Egypt, and their fame spread to the tribes in Europe. In the time of Solomon, the Queen of Saba, whom the Abyssinians call Maqueda, visited Jerusalem. She became one of the wives of Solomon, and their descendants, according to the annals of the country, ruled for many centuries. From the time of Solomon many Jews were to be found in Ethiopia, and about the time of our Saviour's death a cham-

---

anciently? What queen visited Solomon? Who ruled in our Saviour's

verlain of Queen Candace visiting Jerusalem on a pilgrimage, was baptized by St. Philip, the Deacon.

4. In the fourth century, the whole country was converted by St. Frumentius and Edesius, two brothers from Tyre. The former, ordained bishop of Ethiopia by the patriarch Athanasius, of Alexandria, converted Aizana, the king. In 522, Elesbaan was king of Ethiopia. Aroused by the cruelties practiced by the Jews in Arabia, he invaded that country, and restored the freedom of the Christian worship.

5. The Jews in the country formed a little kingdom, and about the middle of the tenth century, Esther, a Jewess, made herself queen of all Ethiopia, and cut off all the family of Solomon but one prince, who fled to Shoa, and founded a new kingdom. A Christian dynasty, called Zegue, succeeded Esther, and ruled till the thirteenth century, when the Kings of Shoa became kings of Abyssinia.

6. In the sixteenth century, the Mohammedans, under Mohamet Graan, attempted to conquer the country, but were defeated by Claudius with the help of some Portuguese. Bermudez, a Catholic, was appointed Patriarch; some Jesuit Fathers were sent, and every effort made to bring the Abyssinians to a pure and uncorrupted form of Christianity. For a time they succeeded, the Church of Abyssinia submitted to the Pope, but in a few years the Catholics were persecuted, the missionaries put to death, and to the joy of many in Europe, the Abyssinians returned to their superstitions, and still practice them.

---

time? 4. When was Abyssinia converted? What king protected the Arab Christians? 5. What kingdom arose in the fifth century? What new Christian kingdom arose? 6. What Mahomedan attempted to conquer Shoa? What efforts were made to reform religion?

## BARBARY STATES.

1. The countries lying between the Atlas Mountains and the Mediterranean are now called the Barbary States, from the Berbers, who are the descendants of the ancient inhabitants. Morocco is an empire, Algiers a French colony, Tunis, Tripoli, and Barca independent states, governed by their deys. The inhabitants are chiefly Mohammedans, and till lately were known as pirates, who plundered the European vessels in the Mediterranean and Atlantic.



City of Morocco

1. Describe the Barbary States. 2. What States flourished here in

2.  
color  
of C  
and  
was  
cruel  
and  
thag  
whic  
Gree  
twice

3.  
mand  
an a  
Rom  
ende  
their  
in ci  
comp

4.  
dence  
106  
and a  
and  
preac  
tullia

ancien  
destro  
were  
san y



2. In ancient times, Barca was occupied by the Grecian colony of Cyrene; Tunis and Tripolis by the Phœnician colony of Carthage; Algiers and Morocco by the kingdoms of Numidia and Mauritania. The city of Carthage was near Tunis. It was founded by Dido, a Phœnician princess, who fled from the cruelty of her brother, about 878 B. C. Many followed her, and they formed a thriving city. Like the Phœnicians, the Carthaginians were a commercial people, and soon sent out colonies, which conquered Sicily and Spain, and joined Xerxes against Greece. In 264 B. C., they began a war with Rome, which was twice renewed, and ended in the fall of Carthage, 146 B. C.

3. During these three wars the Carthaginians were commanded by Hamilcar, Asdrubal, and Hannibal. Hannibal led an army through Spain into Italy, and nearly overthrew the Roman republic; but was recalled and defeated at Zama. This ended the second war. But the Carthaginians rebelled, and their city was taken and destroyed. It was twenty-three miles in circumference, and was seventeen days burning before it was completely consumed.

4. Numidia lay west of Carthage; it maintained its independence for a time by becoming tributary to Rome, but it fell in 106 B. C. by the crimes of Jugurtha. Mauritania soon followed, and all northern Africa became a Roman province. The arts and sciences were introduced, and Christianity was soon preached in all parts. St. Cyprian, St. Augustine, and Tertullian were all Africans of this province.

---

ancient times? Who founded Carthage? By whom was Carthage destroyed? 3. Who were the great Carthaginian generals? What were the exploits of Hannibal? How large was Carthage? 4. What can you tell of Numidia? What Fathers of the Church were Africans?

5. In the fifth century, all northern Africa was overrun by the Vandals who ruled for about a hundred years. In the seventh century, it was conquered by the Saracens, who established several distinct Mohammedan states, which have subsisted to the present time, subject first to the caliphs, and then to the sultans, but generally independent. The Americans were the first to check their piracy, the English next; but in 1830, the French took Algiers, and put a stop to their ravages.

While their piracy lasted, thousands of Christians were held in slavery, and religious orders were formed to ransom them, and many friars took the place of prisoners to enable them to escape. St. Vincent of Paul, the most benevolent man of modern times, was once a slave in Algiers.

---

### OTHER AFRICAN STATES.

1. The history of the other parts of Africa is unknown. The interior is inhabited by negroes, and in Senegambia and Guinea many are sold as slaves. At the Cape of Good Hope is a colony founded by the Dutch, but taken from them by the English, who for many years have waged war with the Caffres, a barbarous tribe.

---

5. Who conquered northern Africa in the fifth century? Who in the seventh? Who checked the piracy of these people? Who took Algiers in 1830?

1. What can you tell of the other African States?

## CHRONOLOGY OF AFRICA.

	B. C.
Egypt founded, . . . . .	2188
Shepherd Kings rule Egypt, . . . . .	1600
Sesostris flourished, . . . . .	1550
Carthage founded, . . . . .	813
Persians conquer Egypt, . . . . .	526
Alexander conquers Egypt, . . . . .	332
Carthage destroyed by the Romans, . . . . .	146
Egypt conquered by the Romans, . . . . .	30
	A. C.
St. Anthony flourishes, . . . . .	320
Ethiopia converted, . . . . .	327
Vandals conquer northern Africa, . . . . .	439
Saracens conquer Egypt and Barbary, . . . . .	650
Turks conquer Egypt and Barbary, . . . . .	1517
Portuguese in Abyssinia, . . . . .	1517
Dutch colonize the Cape of Good Hope, . . . . .	1515
Egypt invaded by Napoleon, . . . . .	1798
Barbary States chastised by America, . . . . .	1815
Algiers taken by the French, . . . . .	1830
Mehemet Ali, pacha of Egypt, died, . . . . .	1848

## GEOGRAPHY OF EUROPE.

**Q.** In what part of the eastern continent is Europe?

**A.** Europe, the smallest of the divisions of the eastern continent, lies in the north-west. It is separated from Africa by the Mediterranean Sea, and from Asia by the Ural Mountains.

**Q.** How does it rank among the various divisions?

**A.** Although the smallest, Europe has long been the most powerful of the great divisions. The nations of Europe colonized America, and still control many other parts.

**Q.** What parts of Europe attained great eminence in ancient times for civilization and power?

**A.** The first European states, in ancient times, that attained eminence and power were Greece and Rome. Rome finally conquered Greece, Spain, France, England, and Germany, as well as parts of Asia and Africa, and introduced civilization throughout the parts that had been barbarous.

**Q.** What was the fate of the Roman Empire?

**A.** This empire at last perished, destroyed by the Huns from Asia, and savage tribes from Norway and Sweden, who founded various new kingdoms, some of which still subsist.

**Q.** What are the principal powers in Europe now?

**A.** At this time the chief states are England, France, Russia, Spain, Portugal, Sweden, Denmark, Turkey, and the various states of Germany and Italy.

---



MAP OF EUROPE.



## QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF EUROPE.

1. Bound Europe.
  2. What oceans on the north? On the west? What sea on the south? What continent on the east?
  3. What seas between Europe and Asia? What three seas in the north?
  4. What country occupies all the east of Europe? What country is between the Baltic and North Sea? Between the North Sea and the Atlantic? Between the North Sea and the Mediterranean?
  5. What country between France and Russia? *Ans.* Germany. What are the two largest German States? *Ans.* A. and P.
  6. What small republic between France and Austria? What two countries between the Mediterranean and Atlantic? What long peninsula in the Mediterranean?
  7. What country is between the Gulf of Venice and the Black Sea? What country south of Turkey? What sea east of Greece? *Ans.* The Archipelago.
  8. What mountains between France and Spain? Between Italy and Switzerland? In Turkey? Between Europe and Asia? Between the Black Sea and the Caspian Sea?
  9. In what country is the river Loire? The Tiber? The Danube? The Dnieper? The Don? The Volga?
  10. In what country is London? Rome? Berlin? Madrid? St. Petersburg? Dublin? Athens? Brussels? Stockholm? Lisbon? Copenhagen? Vienna?
-

## GREECE.

1. Greece was settled by the descendants of Japhet, and as it was settled at different times, several small states arose; the greatest of which were Athens and Sparta, both founded, as is supposed, fifteen hundred years before Christ.

2. These colonies were at first extremely rude, and were frequently at war with each other. The names of many kings are mentioned, but the accounts of their kings and heroes are so mixed up with stories of the gods and goddesses they worshipped, that there is no certainty about them.

3. The greatest of the early kings of Athens was Theseus, of whom many brave deeds are recorded. In his time took place the Argonautic expedition to Colchis, on the Black Sea, a war in which most of the Grecian princes joined. The next general war was that against Troy, in which Agamemnon, king of Mycenæ, led the nations of Greece to avenge the wrongs of Menelaus, king of Sparta, whose wife Helen had been carried off by Paris, a Trojan prince. After a long siege of ten years, the city of Troy was taken and burnt.

4. According to one account the Greeks got into Troy by a stratagem. Pretending to be tired of the long war, they made a wooden horse as an offering to the gods, and pretended to sail away. They, however, sent one man to persuade the Trojans to take the horse into the town, and the foolish Trojans took it

---

1. By whom was Greece settled? And how? What were the two great states? 2. What can you tell of the early history of Greece? 3. Who was the greatest king of Athens? What expedition took place in his time? What was the next general war? 4. How was Troy



in. This horse was full of men, and by night they got out, and opened the gates to the Greeks.

5. The last king of Athens was Codrus, who laid down his life for his country. The idolatrous priests had declared that the nation which lost its king in the next battle should triumph in the war. Codrus, hearing this, rushed into the midst of the battle, and was slain. The Athenians, seeing this, easily won the day, but felt so much respect for Codrus, that they would not choose another king, and were governed by Archons.

6. After some time, the history of Greece becomes more certain. About 884 B. C., Lyeurgus, king of Sparta, a wise and intelligent man, reformed the constitution and introduced many laws to make the people brave, hardy and temperate. Soon after, the Olympic Games were restored, and in all the states of Greece men imitated the Spartans so as to be able to win the prizes at those games, for boxing, wrestling, running and driving.

7. Athens received a new constitution from Draco, a good but very severe man, whose laws were extremely cruel. Solon, a philosopher and patriot, modified these laws: he divided the people into classes, erected a senate and a court of justice, and endeavored to put a stop to the political parties which agitated the state. Before he could succeed, Pisistratus, the head of a party, pretending to have been wounded by his enemies, caused a revolution and became king.

8. Pisistratus, although he had usurped the throne, reigned

---

taken? 5. Who was the last king of Athens? How did he die? What form of government followed? 6. Who was Lyeurgus, and what did he do? What were restored about this time? 7. Who gave a new constitution to Athens? What great legislator followed? Who usurped the

well; he established order, encouraged learning and the arts, and erected many beautiful buildings. In his time the poems of Homer were first collected, and have ever since been the admiration of the world. Homer was a poor blind man, who made his verses about the war of Troy, and was so little thought of in his life time, that we do not know where he was born, nor when nor where he died.

9. After the death of Pisistratus, his two sons Hippias and Hipparchus, succeeded him; but one having given offence to a young man, the latter and his friends formed a plot and assassinated Hipparchus, but lost their own lives. The movement, however, had begun, Hippias was soon expelled and Harmodius was celebrated as a martyr to liberty, having lost his life in effecting the death of Hipparchus.

10. About five hundred years before Christ, Darius, king of Persia, determined to conquer Greece, instigated by Hippias. He advanced against that country with an army of 500,000 men, but the Greeks were undaunted; the Athenians raised a small army and met the Persians at Marathon. Here a bloody battle was fought, and Hippias, the instigator of the war, was slain; the Persians were entirely defeated. Miltiades, the Athenian general, soon after died in prison, where he was confined by his ungrateful countrymen.

11. The defeat of this army did not dishearten the Persians. Xerxes, a new king, raised an army of nearly a million; but he was a proud and foolish prince. On his march, he ordered a mountain to get out of his way, and punished the sea by lashing it with chains for dispersing his fleet. He entered Greece,

kingdom? 8. What can you tell of Pisistratus? 9. Who succeeded Pisistratus? How did their power end? 10. Who made war on Athens about this time? Who defeated the Persians? What became of Miltiades? 11. Who next invaded Greece? Tell some of his foolish

but his immense army was stopped at Thermopylæ by 6000 Spartans, under their king, Leonidas. Xerxes ordered him to give up his arms. "Come and take them," said Leonidas. Xerxes tried, but his bravest troops were cut to pieces, although the stout Spartan had sent away all but a few hundred men, and he never would have taken it, if a Greek traitor had not led him around by a secret path. Leonidas and his party were then killed and Xerxes marched on to Athens, which he burnt to the ground.

12. Xerxes was now at the height of his glory; but the Athenians, under Themistocles, defeated his fleet at B. C., 490. Salamis, and with the Spartans routed his army at Platæa. Humbled by these reverses, Xerxes fled to Persia, leaving his army in Greece. The Persians fought hard to maintain their ground but were repeatedly defeated by Cimon the Athenian, and at last, all expelled.

13. Greece was now at the summit of her military fame. Athens, under Cimon, Pericles and Alcibiades, was the seat of learning and art. Here flourished the poets Æschylus, Aristophanes and Pindar, Euripides and Sophocles; Phidas, the greatest of sculptors; the painter Zeuxis; Lysias, the orator; Hippocrates, the physician; and Herodotus, the father of history. Pericles was one of the best men that Greece ever produced. He ruled for forty years, and yet on his death-bed could say, that not one of his fellow-citizens had ever been compelled to put on mourning by any act of his.

14. Under Alcibiades a war broke out with Sparta, which

---

acts. Where was he stopped? 12. Who defeated Xerxes on sea and land? What was the result of the war? 13. What was the state of Greece at this time? What eminent man flourished? What can you

lasted twenty-eight years and ended in the total humiliation of Athens. It is known as the Peloponnesian war. Lysander, the Spartan general, overthrew the popular government, and appointed thirty captains to rule Athens; but their conduct was so cruel that they are known in history as the thirty tyrants. After three years of bondage the Athenians rose and expelled them. 431-405.

15. About this time there lived at Athens a very wise man named Socrates. Although brought up in idolatry, he saw its absurdity, and taught his disciples that there was only one God. His enemies made use of this to ruin him, and at last had him put to death. As he was dying, one of his friends regretted that he should die innocent. "Would you have me die guilty?" he asked, teaching us not to fear death, but to fear sin, which is worse than death.

16. Sparta next made war on Thebes, another of the Grecian States. The other states joined Sparta, but the Thebans were brave and resolved to maintain their independence. Led by her great generals Pelopidas and Epaminondas, Thebes broke for ever the power of Sparta in the bloody battles of Leuctra and Mantinea. In the last, Epaminondas died in the arms of victory. These two generals were also good men and noble patriots. B. C. 363.

17. These civil wars ruined Greece; her resources were gradually exhausted; her great men had fallen; corruption and

---

tell of Pericles? 14. What war broke out under Alcibiades? Who conquered Athens? What government followed? How long did it last? 15. What philosopher lived about this time? What can you tell of him? 16. What state did Sparta next attack? Who were the great Theban generals? 17. What was the effect of these civil wars? Who

intrigue prevailed. Philip, king of Macedon, a territory in the north of Greece, had acquired great power, and when a new war arose among the states about the temple of Apollo at Delphi, he advanced with an army, and though Demosthenes, the great orator, roused all Greece against him, he defeated the united armies of Athens and Thebes at Chæronea. He was now master of Greece, and had been appointed to command the armies raised for the conquest of Persia, when he was assassinated.

18. On the death of Philip, his son Alexander, succeeded to his power. He was only twenty years of age, but he had been carefully educated, and had already shewn himself an able general and a good soldier. On his accession several northern tribes revolted, but he soon reduced them; and as Thebes and Athens were endeavoring to throw off his yoke, he defeated the Thebans, destroyed their city, and thus overawed the rest. An assembly of the states was convened at Corinth, and here Alexander was appointed commander-in-chief against Persia.

19. Alexander soon entered Asia with an army of 35,000 men, and defeating the Persians at the Granicus, conquered Asia Minor. Darius, himself, met him at Issus, but was defeated with great loss, and all Syria fell into the power of Alexander. Tyre resisted him, but after a long siege was taken, and every cruelty exercised on its brave defenders. Alexander then marched to Jerusalem, but spared it, and afterwards conquered Egypt.

20. Darius endeavored to make peace; but Alexander again

---

now acquired supreme power? What orator opposed him? 18. Who succeeded Philip? Who opposed him? 19. What were the results of Alexander's war with Darius? 20. What was the end of Darius?

ry in the  
new war  
t Delphi,  
the great  
e united  
now mas-  
e armies  
ated.  
ucceeded  
t he had  
ewn him-  
On his ac-  
a reduced  
to throw  
their city,  
ates was  
nted com-

of 35,000  
conquered  
t was de-  
power of  
siege was  
defenders.  
l it, and

der again

18. Who  
results of  
of Darius?



Alexander taming Bucephalus.

advanced, and by the victory of Arbela, became master of Persia. Darius fled, but was soon after murdered by one of his officers. The conqueror then subdued various tribes in that part of Asia, while his general, Antipater, defeated the Spar

tans who had revolted in Greece. The last exploit of Alexander was the invasion of India.

21. Alexander had now reached the pinnacle of glory, and was one of the greatest conquerors the world ever saw. He had some good qualities—he was brave, generous and liberal, but proud, vain, ambitious, and at last drank to excess. While under the influence of liquor he set fire to Persepolis, killed his friend Clitus, and at last died in the year 324 B. C.

22. On the death of Alexander, Greece fell to Cassander, one of his generals, but for many years it was a prey to intestine wars, especially those of the Achæan league against the Macedonians, in which Aratus and Philopœmen acquired great renown. At last, in the year 197 B. C., the Romans attacked Macedon, defeated the king, and in a few campaigns overthrew the power founded by Philip, after it had lasted nearly two hundred years.

23. Greece now prospered for a time under the Achæan league, to which Sparta and Corinth belonged. They, at last, however, were rash enough to provoke the Romans, who sent the Consul Mummius to subdue them. Corinth the capital was taken and burnt, the men put to the sword, the women sold as slaves. Thus ended in 146 B. C., the independence of Greece, and the country became, under the name of Achaia, a part of the Roman dominion.

24. The history of Greece, as a Roman province, is not re-

---

What was Alexander's last exploit? 21. What is the character of Alexander? 22. To whom did Greece pass on Alexander's death? What league was soon after formed? Who overthrew the Macedonian power? 23. Who conquered the Achæans? What did Greece now become? 24. What change took place while Greece was a Roman

mark  
Paul  
whole  
In the  
Chris  
empir  
and fi  
25.

died,  
found

provin  
pened





St. Paul preaching at Athens.

markable. Soon after the establishment of the Church, St. Paul preached the gospel in various parts, and gradually the whole country became Christian in spite of great persecutions. In the year 306 A. C. Constantine the Great, who had become Christian, founded Constantinople, and made it the seat of his empire. After this, the idolaters were excluded from the cities, and from living in villages were called in Greek, pagans.

25. In 395 Theodosius, the last of the great Roman emperors died, and his two sons divided the territories. Arcadius founded the Greek Empire which lasted several centuries. It

---

province? Who transferred the Empire to Greece? 25. What happened in 395? What did the Greek Empire embrace? What was its

embraced Greece, Turkey and Egypt; then, all Christian countries; and many eminent doctors flourished, as St. Basil, St. Chrysostom, and St. Gregory. The history of the Greek Empire is uninteresting; the country was attacked by barbarians, and the people divided by various heresies, in which the emperors often took part.

26. Among the greatest sovereigns were St. Pulcheria, the daughter of Arcadius, equally eminent for her piety and virtues as a woman, and her skill and genius as a ruler. Justinian I., is famous for the code of laws compiled in his reign, and for the victories achieved by his generals Belisarius and Narses, over the barbarians in Italy and Africa. He died in 565. Heraclius, who was crowned in 610, was a great warrior; he defeated the Persians in six campaigns, and during his reign the empire enjoyed a state of peace which it had seldom known.

27. After this it was governed by many weak and wicked kings; and in the time of the crusades so often betrayed the warriors of the west that they took Constantinople, and for sixty years French or Latin princes governed the empire. The Saracens took all the Asiatic possessions of Greece; the Turks went further: in 1453 they took Constantinople; the last emperor, Constantine, died fighting amid his English guards, and the Greek Empire ceased to exist.

---

### TURKISH EMPIRE.

28. Greece then took the name of Turkey and has been so called to the present time, except a small portion in the south

---

history? 26. Who were the greatest sovereigns? 27. By whom was

which became independent a few years since. The Turks made Constantinople their capital. Mahomet II., the first sultan, was a wise and politic prince. Selim conquered all Northern Africa; Solyman, the magnificent, attempted to take Vienna, and the other sultans likewise tried to extend their conquests in Europe, but always in vain. The Knights of Malta long held Rhodes, and afterwards Malta against them, as the Venetians did Candia.

29. After the time of Mahomet IV. who conquered that island, but was defeated by Sobieski at Vienna, the Turkish power declined. The power was in the hands of a body of soldiers called Janizaries, who frequently put the sultans to death, and raised others to the throne. This formidable body was broken up and massacred by the emperor Mahmoud only a few years since.

30. Russia has for the last century been gradually encroaching on Turkey, and now occupies some of her territories with a powerful army. In 1821 Greece revolted and became independent; the Pacha of Egypt, Mehemet Ali, did the same, and endeavored to overthrow the power of the sultan, but was at last defeated.

31. The Turks are Mahomedans, and adhere to their Asiatic customs, although many changes have been introduced by the last two sultans; the Turks are the ruling people in the empire,

---

the empire seized for a time? Who took the African and Asiatic provinces? Who finally overthrew the empire? 28. What name did Greece then take? Who were the greatest sultans? Who long opposed them? 29. After whose reign did their power decline? Who were the Janizaries? 30. What has been the relation of Russia to Turkey? What province revolted in the present century? 31. Describe

but there are many Greek, Armenian and other Christians, who always have been and still are much persecuted.

---

### MODERN GREECE.

32. When the Greeks, by the help of England, France and Russia, achieved their independence, at the decisive battle of Navarino, they formed a republic and elected Count Capo d'Istria as president. He was assassinated in 1829, and then the European powers made it a kingdom, and chose as the first king Otho, a Bavarian prince, who has governed them ever since.

---

### CHRONOLOGY OF GREECE.

	B. C.
Greece settled by Inachus, . . . . .	1856
Athens founded, . . . . .	1556
Trojan war, ended, . . . . .	1184
Lycurgus makes laws for Sparta, . . . . .	884
Draco for Athens, . . . . .	624
Persians invade Greece, . . . . .	480
Pericles, . . . . .	445
The Peloponnsian war, . . . . .	431

---

the Turks? 32. What government did the Greeks adopt? Who was the first president? Who is now king?

Philip conquers Greece, . . . . .	338
Alexander begins his reign, . . . . .	336
The Achæan league, . . . . .	251
Macedonian power destroyed, . . . . .	197
Greece conquered, . . . . .	146
	A. C.
Roman Empire transferred to Greece, . . . . .	395
Crusaders seize the Empire, . . . . .	1204
Greek Empire overthrown, . . . . .	1453
Solyman reigns, . . . . .	1529
Greeks revolt, . . . . .	1821
Greece, a kingdom, . . . . .	1832

## ITALY.

## THE ROMAN REPUBLIC.

1. Italy is a fine country in the south of Europe, extending into the Mediterranean in the form of a boot. It is traversed by the Apennines, and encircled on the north by the Alps, and contains the only volcanoes in Europe; these are Vesuvius, Etna, and Stromboli, the two latter in islands off the coast. The soil is fertile, the climate delightful, and its position for commerce excellent.

2. Italy was once the seat of the powerful Roman Empire, but has long been divided into several small states. The Pope presides over one of these, and resides at Rome; although as a

---

1. Describe Italy. 2. Of what empire was it the seat? Of what



The Pope blessing the People.

temporal prince, his power is very trifling, yet as head of the Catholic Church, he reigns over more hearts than the greatest emperor ever did over subjects.

2. Italy was, in ancient times, divided into several small

sta  
bef  
of  
exp  
she  
bro  
was  
die  
3  
Ho  
ius  
last  
Ro  
last  
him  
4  
rep  
Ma  
king  
take  
arm  
prev  
5  
Tar  
com  
patr  
actu

pow  
wh  
thei

states, of different origin. Rome was founded, only 752 years before Christ, by two brothers, Romulus and Remus, grandsons of a neighboring king. Soon after their birth, they were exposed on the Tiber, but floating ashore, were suckled by a she-wolf. Shortly after founding the city, Romulus killed his brother, and ruled alone. In a war with the Sabines, Romulus was compelled to take their king as an associate, and soon after died.

3. Five other kings succeeded : Numa, the legislator ; Tullus Hostilius, a warlike prince ; Ancus Martius ; Tarquin I.; Servius Tullius, and Tarquin II., surnamed the Proud. All but the last governed wisely, and extended the power and influence of Rome. Tarquin II. was a tyrannical prince, and the people at last, roused at a crime committed by his son Sextus, drove him from the throne, and expelled his whole family. 509 B.C.

4. On the expulsion of Tarquin, the people made Rome a republic, to be governed by two consuls, elected every year. Many states made war on Rome, to restore Tarquin. Porsena, king of Clusium, advanced with a large army, and would have taken the city, had not Horatius, a brave Roman, checked his army at the head of a bridge, until the people cut it down, and prevented the enemy from crossing.

5. In thirteen years the Romans defeated all these friends of Tarquin; they then began to quarrel among themselves. The common people, or plebeians, complained that the nobles, or patricians, oppressed them, and resolved to leave Rome. They actually retired to a camp, outside the city, and refused to

---

power now? 3. How was Italy anciently divided? When, and by whom was Rome founded? 4. Who succeeded Romulus? What was their character? What caused the expulsion of Tarquin? 5. What did



493 B. C. return till the patricians agreed to the election of tribunes to defend the rights of the people.

6. Coriolanus was a brave nobleman who had won several victories. He was a great opponent of the common people, and the tribunes had him banished. Indignant at this, he joined the Volscians, raised an army, and marched on Rome. The people now endeavored to appease him, but neither the senators nor priests could move him. As a last hope, his mother went out to intercede for Rome. Coriolanus was a good son, he yielded to her prayers, and exclaiming, "Mother, thou hast saved Rome, but lost thy son!" withdrew his army. For this the Volscians put him to death.

7. From this period, the Romans gradually extended their dominion in Italy under Cincinnatus, Camillus, and other brave generals. The government was for a time in the hands of ten men, called Decemvirs, chosen at first to form a code of laws; but as they became tyrannical, and were guilty of great crimes, their power was abolished. In 385 B. C., Brennus, king of the Gauls, a people of France, invaded Italy, took Rome, killed the senators, and many of the people, but were at last driven out. About 300 B. C. the Romans conquered the Samnites and Latins, and soon after defeated Pyrrhus, king of Epirus, who had invaded Italy.

8. When the Romans had conquered all Italy, they attempted to take Sicily. This led to a war with Carthage, which claimed that island. This war is called the Punic war;

---

Rome now become? What king made war on them? 6. How long did these wars continue? What troubles came next? 7. Who was Coriolanus, and what is his story? 8. What brave generals flourished? Who ruled for a time? Who invaded Italy in 385? What wars followed

it was twice renewed, and many battles were fought in Africa, Italy, and Spain. Hannibal, the Carthagenian, led an army from Africa through Spain, and over the Alps into Italy. Here he defeated the Romans at Cannæ, with such slaughter that the gold rings of the knights were gathered in baskets; but his enemies recalled him to Carthage, and made peace. The Carthagenians renewed the war again, but were defeated, and their city was destroyed, 146 B. C.

9. In the same year the Romans, who had previously defeated the Macedonians, conquered the Greeks, and thus masters of Greece, Italy, Spain, and all northern Africa, were rapidly advancing into Asia. Amid all these victories, Rome was threatened by the Teutons and Cimbri, two German nations, who invaded Italy, and after their defeat, by a civil war between Marius and Sylla, two eminent generals, whose struggle filled Rome with blood and terror.

10. In the east, Mithridates, king of Pontus, was conquered, and Syria reduced by Pompey. Cicero, the greatest of Roman orators, suppressed at Rome the conspiracy of Cataline, a wicked nobleman who endeavored to destroy his country. Cæsar, an able writer and general, conquered Gaul, invaded Germany and Britain, and Cassius, another general, invaded Persia, but was defeated.

11. Cæsar and Pompey were now at the head of powerful armies, and a civil war ensued. Pompey was defeated at Pharsalia, and fleeing to Egypt, was basely murdered. His party

---

What led to the wars with Carthage? What are these wars called? What were the exploits of Hannibal? 9. What were the next Roman conquests? Who invaded Italy? What civil war ensued? 10. Who were conquered in the east? What great Roman flourished? 11. Be-

held out in Africa and Spain, but was soon reduced, and Cæsar was proclaimed perpetual dictator. He did not long enjoy his power, for a conspiracy was formed against him, and he was stabbed in the Senate house, 44 B. C.

12. Brutus and Cassius, the heads of the conspiracy, endeavored to restore the republic, but were defeated by the adherents of Cæsar, led by Octavius and Anthony. A new civil war broke out between them, and Octavius, having defeated Anthony at the battle of Actium, 31 B. C., remained sole master of the Roman power. Taking the name of Augustus, he assumed the title of emperor. Peace now prevailed, and at this moment our Saviour was born.

13. The Roman Empire, at that time, included Britain, France, Spain, Portugal, Italy, Greece, Turkey in Europe and in Asia, all northern Africa, and Egypt; and as this was all ruled by one man, the apostles and their disciples easily penetrated to all these countries to preach the Gospel, and St. Peter, the chief of the apostles stationed himself at Rome.

14. After Augustus, many emperors followed, elected by the soldiers, or seizing the throne by force. Occasionally a son would succeed his father, but this was rare. Many of them were monsters of wickedness, and almost all persecuted the Christians. Among these wicked men were Tiberius, a gloomy tyrant, Caligula, who made his horse consul, and Nero, who killed his own mother, and after setting fire to Rome, accused the Christians of it, and put many to death, among the rest, St. Peter and St. Paul.

---

tween whom did a civil war break out? Where did Cæsar triumph? How did he die? 12. What did Brutus try to do? With what success? What next ensued? Who triumphed? What did Augustus found? 13. What did the Roman Empire include? 14. What wicked

15. During the persecutions which now began, the Christians took refuge in the Catacombs, or quarries under Rome, and even here many were killed. These Catacombs still exist, and abound in monuments of the early Christians, which are very consoling for us, and teach us to love our religion, although governments and nations may treat us as poor, and ignorant, and superstitious.

16. Some of the emperors were better men, as Galba, Vespasian, Titus, who destroyed Jerusalem, Trajan, Adrian, Aurelius, and Severus, who were brave men, and generally governed well, although they were so prejudiced against the poor Christians that they treated them very cruelly. Under them the empire extended, and at last Dioclesian, finding it too large for one man to govern, took one associate, and afterwards two others. He was very cruel, and persecuted the Christians so, that he boasted that he had destroyed their religion, but, instead of that, he was himself the last pagan emperor.

17. After the resignation of Diocletian a civil war ensued, but Constantine, the son of a Christian lady, triumphed over all, and having been converted by the miracle of a cross appearing in the heavens, became a Christian, and began to overthrow idolatry in the empire, 306 A. C. He removed the seat of his power to Constantinople, and from this time Italy became only a province.

18. Julian, one of the successors of Constantine, returned to paganism, and is commonly called the Apostate. He was a

---

emperors ruled? 15. Where did the Christians assemble? 16. Name some of the better emperors? How did all treat the Christians? Who was the last pagan emperor? What was his character? 17. Who succeeded? What can you tell of him? 18. Who was Julian? What did

proud and cruel prince, and after oppressing the Church, was killed in battle with the Persians. The greatest of the succeeding emperors was Theodosius the Great, who defeated the Goths and Huns, and overthrew Maximus, who attempted to seize the empire. Theodosius was a mild and forgiving prince, but having on one occasion massacred several thousand people in a rebellious city, St. Ambrose excluded him from the Church, till he had done penance for it.

19. Theodosius was not long at peace, he was next attacked by Arbogastes, who had murdered Valentinian, the associate emperor, and proclaimed Eugenius. Theodosius was however victorious, but died soon after, leaving his empire to be divided between his two sons, Honorius and Arcadius, the former in the west, the latter in the east, 395 A. C.

20. Under Honorius, the western empire sank; before his death the Vandals ravaged France and Spain, and conquered Africa; the Suevi subdued Spain, the Franks France, and the Goths, under Alaric, took Rome, and became masters of Italy, but subsequently settled in Spain. Aetius, a brave general, called *the last of the Romans*, for a few years upheld the glory of Rome, and defeated several of these warlike tribes; but in 451 Attila, king of the Huns, appeared at the head of an immense army. Roman, Goth, and Frank, now united, and in the terrible battle of Chalons, Aetius defeated the Huns, who left over one hundred thousand dead on the field. The next year Attila invaded Italy, and after defeating the armies sent against him, was advancing on Rome, when Pope St. Leo induced him to make peace.

---

he do? 19. What can you tell of Theodosius the Great? What happened on his death? 20. What province was taken by barbarians?

21. Soon after this, Italy was invaded by the Vandals from Africa, and after a succession of feeble emperors, Odoacer, king of the Heruli, deposed Romulus Augustulus the last emperor of Rome, 476 A. C. Thus ended the Roman Empire, which had lasted 1229 years from the building of the city. God had raised it up as a means of propagating the Church, and it was now no longer needed.

22. The Ostrogoths, or Eastern Goths, again invaded Italy in 489, and under Theodoric, founded a new kingdom, which under that wise and generally good monarch, attained great prosperity. Soon after his death, Italy was invaded by Belisarius, a general of the Greek Empire, who conquered it and took the Gothic king prisoner; the Goths rallied under Totila; but Narses, the successor of Belisarius, defeated and killed him and Teias, the last of the Gothic kings of Italy. The whole country thus passed again to the emperors of the east.

23. About 568, Alboin, king of the Lombards, conquered what is now called Lombardy; but the rest of Italy for two centuries remained a province of the Greek Empire, governed by the exarchs of Ravenna, then the capital. In 752 the Lombards attacked the exarchate; and the Pope, the Father of Italy, after in vain invoking the aid of the Greek emperor, called on Pepin, king of France, who invaded Italy, defeated the Lombards, and wresting from them their new conquests bestowed them on the Holy See, and thus founded the temporal power of the Popes. The Lombards soon after attempted to re-conquer it, but were defeated by Charlemagne, who in 774

---

What brave general saved Rome? Who invaded Italy? 21. Who next invaded Italy? When was the empire overthrown? 22. What people next conquered Italy? Who reconquered it? 23. What people then

put an end to the Lombard kingdom. In consequence of this and other services, Charlemagne was in 800 crowned by the Pope, emperor of the west.

24. On the death of Charlemagne, Italy with the imperial title passed to his son Lothaire, but soon became divided among several princes; the Normans not long after expelled the Greeks and Saracens from the south, and founded a new kingdom. For a time the history of Italy is uninteresting till the reign of the great Pope Gregory VII., who endeavored to free the Church from the tyranny of the German emperors, and maintained a noble struggle against Henry IV.

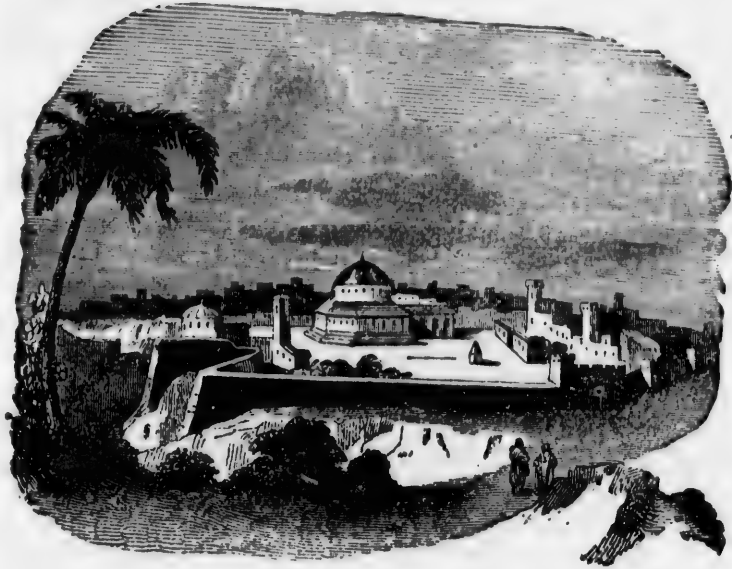
25. In 1095, Pope Urban I., moved by the representations of Peter the Hermit, roused Europe to attempt the recovery of Jerusalem from the Saracens, and by his eloquent appeal at Clermont in France, originated the first crusade, in which the Norman princes, especially, entered with zeal. Fifty years after, Pope Eugene and St. Bernard again aroused Europe to save the Christian Kingdom of Jerusalem; and though other Popes used their influence, and other crusades were proclaimed, Jerusalem was finally lost.

26. During this period Venice arose to be a great commercial republic, and under her Doges possessed great power in the east. Other republics arose at Genoa and Florence, and Italy thus became the centre of liberty, enlightenment, arts and manufactures. As a part of the German Empire, Italy was in the thirteenth century the scene of the civil war between the

---

seized the north? Who defeated them? Who finally overthrew the Lombard kingdom? 24. Who next formed a kingdom in the south? Who began to oppose the emperors? 25. What Popes encouraged the crusades? 26. What republics arose in Italy? What civil war desolated





The Crusades.—Jerusalem.

Guephs and the Ghibelines. Soon after the French seized Sicily, but were expelled by the Arragonese, and a long war ensued marked by great cruelties.

27. The struggle between the emperors and Popes continued, and at last, Clement V., in 1309, to escape the oppression of the emperor removed to France, and for many years the Popes resided at Avignon. During their absence, Rome and Italy were in a very distracted state. A period of great prosperity followed their return, and Florence, under the Medici, attained a great degree of splendor.

---

the country? What nations contended for Sicily? 27. Who removed the popedom to Avignon? What was the state of Italy during their ab-

28. Leo X., of this family, became Pope in 1513. He was a great patron of learning and the arts, and began the church of St. Peter. Luther soon after began to attack the doctrines of the Catholic Church. Henry VIII. of England rejected the supremacy of the Pope; and in France and Germany many other Reformers began to make new religions, each according to his own way of thinking. To remedy this, the Pope sum-



The Fortress of Gaeta, as seen from Cicero's Villa

moned, in 1545, a general council at Trent, and the bishops from all different countries unanimously agreed to the former doc-

---

sence? What followed their return? 28. What happened in the reign

trines, while not even in one country could the Protestant doctors agree.

29. After this, few events occurred in the history of Italy till the French revolution, when all the north was conquered by Bonaparte, and the Republics of Venice and Genoa overthrown. Rome was conquered, the Pope imprisoned, and after a time, Napoleon took the title of King of the Lombardo-Venetian Kingdom, and King of Rome, and gave to his brother-in-law the Kingdom of Naples.

30. After the fall of Napoleon, Lombardy and Venice were given to Austria; Savoy, Piedmont, Genoa, and the Island of Sardinia, formed the Kingdom of Sardinia; the Pope and the King of Naples recovered their territories. In this state Italy continued till 1848, when revolution broke out in all parts headed by Charles Albert, the ambitious King of Sardinia, but the Austrians recovered Lombardy, the French restored the Pope, and the King of Naples reduced Sicily, which had revolted.

### CHRONOLOGY OF ITALY.

Rome built, . . . . .	B. C.
Kings expelled, . . . . .	752
The Decemvirs, . . . . .	509
Brennus takes Rome, . . . . .	452
Romans conquer most of Italy by . . . . .	390
	338

of Leo X? What can you tell us of the council of Trent? 29. What changes took place in Europe during the French revolution? 30. What took place in Italy in 1848?

First Punic War began, . . . . .	264
Hannibal defeats the Romans at Cannæ, . . . . .	216
Macedonia, a Roman province, . . . . .	148
Carthage destroyed and Spain reduced, . . . . .	146
Greece a Roman province, . . . . .	146
Numidia subdued, . . . . .	133
Teutons and Cimbric invade Italy, . . . . .	105
Civil war of Marius and Sylla, . . . . .	88
War against Mithridates, . . . . .	87
Syria and Judea taken, . . . . .	63
Gaul conquered, . . . . .	58
Civil war between Cæsar and Pompey, . . . . .	49
Cæsar assassinated, . . . . .	44
Battle of Actium—foundation of Roman Empire, . . . . .	31
	A. C.
Constantine converted, . . . . .	306
The empire divided into the Eastern and Western, . . . . .	395
Roman Empire ended, . . . . .	476
Goths in Italy, . . . . .	489
Lombards found a kingdom, . . . . .	568
Temporal power of the Pope, . . . . .	752
Popes remove to Avignon, . . . . .	1309
Leo X., Pope, . . . . .	1513

## SPAIN AND PORTUGAL.

1. Spain and Portugal occupy a large peninsula on the south-west of Europe, between the Atlantic and Mediterranean, separated from France by the Pyrenees. It is intersected by

- 
1. Describe Spain and Portugal. 2. Who were the original inhabi-

several ranges of mountains, and abounds in minerals. The soil is fertile, and the country well watered.

2. The original inhabitants of Spain were the Celts and Iberians, who lived in a barbarous state. The first civilized people who visited it, were the Phœnicians and Carthaginians, who built cities on the coast, and founded flourishing colonies, which tended much to civilize the people. On the fall of Carthage, the Romans overcame Viriathus, the Lusitanian, and conquering Numantia, became masters of Spain. 133 B. C.

3. While a Roman province, Spain was converted to Christianity, but in the fifth century of the Christian era was conquered by the Suevi, Alains, Vandals, and at last by the Goths, under Astolphus, who founded a kingdom which lasted till 711, when Roderic, the last of the Goths, was killed in the battle of Xeres, by the Saracens from Africa, who soon overran the country.

4. The Goths had been Arians, but Leovigild, the last Arian king, having put his son Ermenigild to death for being a Catholic, was succeeded by his second son, Recared, who became a Catholic, and proved an excellent monarch. Of the other Gothic kings one of the greatest was Wamba, who after a glorious reign, lost his crown by being dressed in a monk's habit, while in a trance, and on his recovery obliged to wear it. Roderic, the last king, was a tyrant, and the Moors or Saracens, under Muza and Taric, were invited over by the noble men who were opposed to him.

---

tants of Spain? Who first visited it? Who finally conquered it?  
 3. What happened while it was a Roman province? What barbarous nations invaded it? Which founded a kingdom? How long did it last?  
 4. Of what religion were the Goths? Who was the first Catholic king?

264

216

148

146

146

133

105

88

87

65

58

49

44

31

A. C.

306

395

476

489

568

752

1309

1513

a on the  
 terranean,  
 sected by

nal inhabi-

5. Spain was now a province of the caliphate, governed by Emirs. The greatest of these was Abderahman who led an immense army into France, to conquer Europe, but was defeated and killed by Charles Martel at Tours, in 733. Some years after this, another Abderahman, a Syrian prince, and last heir of the Ommiades caliphs escaped to Spain, and founded a new caliphate at Cordova, which soon rose to great splendor.

6. During the period of these caliphs, arts and literature flourished in Spain, and under the reign of Hixem, the last caliph, the great Almansor sustained the glory of the Saracen name. On his death, Hixem was deposed, and after a civil war, Mahomedan Spain was divided, in 1031, into several kingdoms.

7. Meanwhile several other kingdoms had been formed in the north by the Christians, who gradually encroached on the Moors. The first of these was Asturias, founded soon after Roderic's death by Pelajo, a Gothic prince. Navarre, Castile, Leon, Arragon, and Portugal, afterwards arose. These were often at war with the Moors, and the Cid is noted for his exploits against them. Among the greatest princes of this period in Spain are Alphonsus the Learned, St. Ferdinand, and Peter the Cruel.

8. Castile and Leon soon united, and in the latter part of the fifteenth century, were governed by Isabella, who married

---

What was the character of Roderic? 5. What did Spain now become? Who was the greatest Emir? How did he die? Who founded the Caliphate of Cordova? 6. What was the state of Spain under its caliphs? Who was the last? Who supported it during his reign? What followed his death? 7. What had the Christians done meanwhile? Name these kingdoms? What chiefly occupies their history? Who were the greatest kings and warriors? 8. What two great kingdoms finally

Ferdinand, king of Arragon. Navarre was soon added to their other states, and they next resolved to overthrow the Moorish power in Spain. After a long war, Granada was taken, in 1492, and Boabdil, the last of the Moorish princes, retired to Africa, and Spain was once more entirely Christian. Isabella was a woman of great virtue and ability; by her aid Columbus obtained means to set out to discover the New World, and America was added to the Spanish dominions.

9. Charles I., grandson of Ferdinand and Isabella, was the first king of all Spain. Having been elected emperor of Germany, most of his reign was spent there, or in conducting his wars with France. In the midst of his greatness he resigned his throne, and was succeeded in Spain by his son, in Germany by his brother, 1556 A. C.

10. Philip II. was the greatest of Spanish kings; besides Spain, he was king of Sicily, duke of Milan, and the Netherlands, and by his marriage with Mary, queen of England, was titular king of that country. His long reign was marked by great events: parts of the Netherlands revolted, and became a republic, and in a great expedition against England, his fleet was dispersed and destroyed; but he frequently defeated the French, and added Portugal to his dominions.

11. Portugal had been founded in the twelfth century by Henry of Burgundy, and had long been a small but flourishing kingdom. John II. was an enterprising monarch, who excited

---

united? What other kingdom was soon added? What project did they form? When was Granada taken? What became of Boabdil? What was the character of Isabella? 9. Who succeeded Ferdinand and Isabella? What can you tell of his reign? What other title had he? How did he cease to reign? 10. What were the possessions of Philip? What were the events of his reign? 11. By whom was Portugal



his people to improve the advantage of their position on the sea coast, and Portugal became a commercial power. The Cape of Good Hope was discovered in 1497, and the Portuguese discovered the passage to the East Indies, and colonized Brazil.

12. In 1578 Sebastian, a young king, and almost the last heir of the family, led an army into Africa, but was defeated and slain. His uncle, the aged Cardinal Henry succeeded, and died soon after. Many claimants appeared, but Philip II. seized the vacant throne, and for sixty years Portugal and Spain were united. At the expiration of that time, John, duke of Braganza, in one day achieved a revolution, which placed him on the throne, and his family still rule over Portugal.

13. For a long period Spain was noted for her extensive conquests and rich colonies in America; but when the Moors were driven out of the country, this and emigration greatly enfeebled her, and she sank in importance. At the beginning of the last century Charles II. died childless; and as two claimants appeared—Philip, a French prince, and Leopold, an Austrian, a war ensued called the war of the succession, in which Philip finally triumphed, although England aided Austria.

14. The Bourbon family have reigned till the present time. During the French revolution a dispute arose between Charles III. and his son Ferdinand; Napoleon entrapped both and placed his brother Joseph on the throne. The Spaniards

---

founded? What great king ruled towards the close of the fifteenth century? 12. What was the history of Sebastian? Who succeeded him? On his death who seized the throne? Who finally freed Portugal? 13. For what was Spain long noted? What weakened her? What king died childless? Who then claimed the throne? What ensued? 14. What family have since reigned? What occurred during the

declared for Ferdinand; England aided them, and for several years the peninsula was deluged with blood. The French were, however, expelled, and Ferdinand VII. restored; he at first granted a constitution, but with the help of a French army revoked it.

15. During this war, Portugal was also invaded by the French, and the royal family fled to Brazil. When peace was restored, John, the regent, returned, but Brazil became an independent empire under Pedro I., a prince of the royal family. About the same time, all the Spanish provinces on the continent of America revolted and formed republican governments, so that Spain and Portugal lost nearly all their colonies.

16. On the death of Pedro, in 1826, Don Miguel ascended the throne of Portugal, but after a time a party was formed against him by the ex-emperor of Brazil, who proclaimed his daughter, Maria, and she, at last, expelled Miguel in 1834, formed a constitutional government by the help of other countries, and reigned till her death in 1853, when she was succeeded by her husband, Peter of Saxe Coburg.

17. A similar scene occurred in Spain on the death of Ferdinand VII. in 1833. Carlos, his brother, claimed the throne on the ground that Ferdinand left no son, and that daughters were excluded. Christina, the mother of Isabella, took up arms; a civil war ensued, and Carlos was at last defeated by the aid of England and France, and Isabella acknowledged queen.

---

French revolution? Who was placed on the throne? 15. What was the state of Portugal then? What colony became an empire? 16. What civil war took place in Portugal? Who was finally expelled? Who succeeded? 17. What began in Spain in 1833? Who claimed the throne? Which succeeded?

## CHRONOLOGY OF SPAIN AND PORTUGAL.

	B. C.
The Phœnicians visited Spain about . . . . .	1000
Spain conquered by the Carthaginians about . . . . .	228
Spain reduced by the Romans, . . . . .	134
Spain invaded by the Suevi, Alains and Vandals about . . . . .	A. D. 406
“ “ “ “ Goths, . . . . .	409
Goths converted to Catholicity, . . . . .	589
Gothic Monarchy destroyed by the Saracens, . . . . .	714
Kingdom of Asturias founded, . . . . .	718
Abderahman elected Caliph, . . . . .	755
Kingdom of Portugal founded, . . . . .	1139
End of the Caliphate, . . . . .	1031
Kingdom of Granada founded, . . . . .	1238
Union of Castile and Arragon, . . . . .	1474
Granada conquered by Ferdinand and Isabella, . . . . .	1492
Portugal taken by Philip II., . . . .	1580
Portugal recovers her independence, . . . . .	1640
Joseph Bonaparte proclaimed king, . . . . .	1808
War of Don Miguel in Portugal, . . . . .	1826
Carlist war in Spain, . . . . .	1833

## FRANCE.

1. France is a beautiful country, lying on the Atlantic between England and Spain ; being separated from the former by the British Channel, and from the latter by the Pyrenean mountains. It is fertile, populous, and well cultivated ; possesses great commercial advantages, and is noted for the manu-

1. Describe France. 2. Who were the first inhabitants? What was

AL.

B. C.

1000

228

134

A. D. 406

409

589

714

718

755

1139

1031

1238

1474

1492

1580

1640

1808

1826

1833



France

the Atlantic  
om the former  
the Pyrenean  
tivated; pos-  
for the manu-

nts? What was

facture of fine and costly goods. The people have always been fond of war and are seldom long at peace.

2. France was originally inhabited by the Gauls, a Celtic race, who were brave and warlike, but not as civilized as the

---

their condition and religion? 3. What king invaded Italy? Where

Greeks and Romans. They had no knowledge of letters, and their religion, a worship of the sun and fire, was very cruel. Their priests, the Druids, frequently sacrificed human beings.

3. About four hundred years before Christ, Brennus, a Celtic king, led a large army of Gauls into Italy; they attacked several states in the north, took Rome, but at last withdrew, and after overrunning Macedonia passed into Asia Minor and founded the Kingdom of Galatia, which subsisted for many centuries. At an early period the Greeks founded the colony of Massilia, now Marseilles, on the Mediterranean, which did much to civilize and improve the country.

4. In the century before the Christian era, the Romans began to extend their power in Gaul, and some of the tribes sought their protection. In the year 58 B. C., Julius Cæsar entered Gaul with a large army, and drove out the Swiss and the Germans, who separately invaded the country. He next subdued the Belgians and completely established the Roman power. The Gauls took the alarm, and under the brave Vercingetorix attempted to drive out the Romans, but after a gallant struggle were subdued, 50 B. C.

5. As a Roman province Gaul advanced rapidly in civilization and refinement and the cruel Druidical worship declined. Christianity was introduced in the times of the Apostles, and in spite of great and bloody persecutions soon extended over the whole country.

---

did his followers finally settle? What civilized nation founded a colony in Gaul? 4. What people entered it just before the Christian era? What tribes were driven out by Cæsar? What brave prince attempted to expel the Romans? 5. What was the state of Gaul under the Romans? What was introduced? 6. Who attacked it as the Roman

6. As the Roman Empire declined, Gaul was exposed to the attacks of the barbarians, and in the latter part of the fourth century was desolated by the Vandals and Goths, the latter of whom formed a kingdom in the south. The Franks, a German tribe, had for many years been gradually gaining the ascendancy, and their king, Clovis, defeated the Romans, Germans and Visigoths, and founded the Kingdom of France in 496.

7. The Franks had been idolaters, but Clovis was converted by the prayers of his wife, St. Clotilda. In one of his battles, being in great danger, he promised to adore the God of Clotilda if victory were granted to him, and was afterwards baptized with many of his people. His successors, who are called the Merovingian Kings, were a weak and slothful race, and the kingdom was maintained only by the talents of officers called mayors of the palace.

8. During the reign of Thierry IV., the last of these kings, France was governed by Charles Martel, a brave prince, who saved Europe by defeating the Saracens at Tours. After this victory, he obtained the name of Martel, or hammer. On the death of Thierry, he ruled as duke, and was succeeded by his son, Pepin the Short, who was crowned king by the Pope, in 751.

9. Pepin was succeeded by Charlemagne, the greatest of the French kings. He was a great warrior, and conquered Germany, most of Italy, and part of Spain, and in 800 was

---

power declined? Who formed a kingdom in the south? Who finally gained the ascendancy? What prince founded the French monarchy?

7. How were the Franks converted? What are the successors of Clovis called? What was their character? Who possessed the power?

8. What brave prince governed under Thierry? What are his ex-

crowned by the Pope emperor of the west. Besides being a warrior, he was a patron of religion and learning, and invited many eminent men to his court. His successors, called the Carolingian Kings, were a weak race, and in 987 the dynasty was set aside by a powerful nobleman, named Hugh Capet.

10. The history of France now presents no remarkable events till the reign of Philip I., when William, duke of Normandy, a province in the north of France, became king of England, and a war began which was often renewed till the English finally lost all the possessions which they had previously obtained in France.

11. The power of the kings was very limited, and many noblemen, almost independent of the crown, frequently joined the enemy. Some years after, the Dutchess of Guienne, a province in the south of France, married a king of England, and thus still more reduced the power of the French kings, who, however, as sovereigns claimed a certain jurisdiction over the whole country.

12. During the Crusades the French took a most active part, and several of their kings led armies in person to the east. Philip Augustus, whose reign began in 1180, was one of the greatest of the crusader kings. He defeated the Germans, and when John, king of England, refused to appear before him to answer the accusation of murdering his nephew Arthur; Philip, as his sovereign, deprived him of his possessions in France, and he and his successors at last drove the English from them.

13. Louis IX., better known as St. Louis, was one of the greatest and best kings that ever lived. He was a pious and

plots? Who succeeded him as king? 9. Who succeeded Pepin? What was his character? What are his successors called? 10. Describe the state of France at this period? 11. What part did the French Kings take in the crusades? 12. What can you tell of St. Louis?



being a  
d invited  
the Car-  
nasty was  
le events  
mandy, a  
nd, and a  
nally lost  
n France.  
nd many  
tly joined  
ne, a pro-  
land, and  
ings, who,  
over the  
etive part,  
the east.  
ne of the  
mans, and  
ore him to  
r; Philip,  
rance, and  
them.  
one of the  
pious and  
ded Pepin?

holy man, a brave and intrepid general, and in his government wise and benevolent. He died in 1270, in Africa, while engaged in a crusade. In the reign of Philip IV. (1328), the war with England began anew; Philip was defeated at Crecy, and his successor, John, taken prisoner at Poitiers, and some time after Charles VI., defeated at Agincourt. France was now reduced to great misery: Henry VI. of England was proclaimed king, on his father's death, at Paris, and a French prince, Charles VII., at Poitiers.

14. The war now broke out again, and the French, roused by the valor and enthusiasm of Joan of Arc, a poor country girl, at last drove the English out, although Joan was taken and burnt by the enemy as a witch. By 1450, the English had nothing on the continent, except Calais.

15. In 1515, **Francis I.** came to the throne, and was one of the greatest kings of France. He encouraged learning and the arts, and carried on a long war with Charles V., emperor of Germany, but was defeated and taken prisoner at the battle of Pavia. In his reign, the reformation spread to France, and the Calvinists soon became formidable. Their conspiracy to assassinate Francis II., in 1560, led to a long and bloody war, in which the utmost cruelty was committed by both parties. Churches and convents were destroyed, priests and monks butchered, and several horrible massacres, among the rest that of St. Bartholomew's, took place. At last, Henry IV., a Protestant prince, ended the war by the battle of Coutras, in 1587, and becoming a Catholic, restored peace to France.

---

13. What war began in 1338? Describe it. 14. Who finally expelled the English? 15. Describe the reign of Francis I. What was the result of the Reformation in France? Who finally restored peace?

16. During the reign of Louis XIII, France, guided by the great Cardinal Richelieu, attained great power, humbled the strength of Germany, colonized Canada, and rivalled England on the ocean. The Protestants, though favored by the laws, revolted, and were not subdued till much blood had been shed; and then were so much feared that the king repealed the edict, passed in their favor by Henry IV., and many French Protestants emigrated to England, Germany and America.

17. Louis XIV. was a great monarch, who reigned from 1643 to 1715, a period in which the French attained their highest reputation in literature and war. Though attacked by England, Germany and Holland, Louis extended the kingdom, and placed his grandson Philip on the throne of Spain. The public improvements of France also received great attention during his reign. Louis XIV., is known in history as the Great Monarch.

18. The next king, Louis XV., was a profligate prince, and died detested, after having allowed religion to be attacked by the pretended philosophers, and suppressed the colleges of the Jesuits to facilitate their efforts. His successor, Louis XVI., was a good king, and aided the Americans in their struggle for independence; but in 1789 a revolution began, in which Louis, his wife and sister, were put to death; his only son died of ill-treatment in prison; the Christian religion was abolished; the clergy and religious banished or put to death.

19. France now became a distracted republic, and one set of men after another passed from power to the scaffold; but the armies of the republic triumphed over all opposition from

---

16. Describe the reign of Louis XIII. 17. Describe that of Louis XIV.  
18. What happened under Louis XV? What occurred in the reign of Louis XVI? 19. What did France now become? What occurred?

abroad, and when the government was committed to a Directory of five men, order was restored. France had now conquered the Netherlands, Holland, Switzerland, part of Germany and Italy, and carried her arms to Egypt to attack England in the east.

20. A new change gave the government to three consuls, the first of whom, Napoleon Bonaparte, after restoring the Catholic religion, and forcing the allies to conclude a peace, was crowned emperor by the Pope, in 1804. By a long series of wars he humbled Austria and Prussia, abolished the German Empire, erected several new kingdoms, gave Naples, Holland, Westphalia and Spain to his brothers, and became master of most of Europe.

21. The Spaniards refused the new king, and the English defeated the French in Spain; but Napoleon did not fear the future. He imprisoned the Pope, ridiculed his excommunication, and marched with an immense army against Russia; but heaven declared against him; his army entered Russia, was victorious, but winter came on, the Russians burned Moscow their capital, in order to deprive him of shelter, and having no winter quarters he was forced to retreat, over 300,000 men perished, and his power destroyed. All rose against him; France was invaded, Napoleon was compelled to abdicate, and sent to the little island of Elba.

22. On the abdication of Napoleon, Louis XVIII., brother of Louis XVI., was made king; but Napoleon returned; Louis fled, and a new war began. At the terrible battle of Waterloo, in 1815, Napoleon after defeating the Prussians, was again attacked by them, while engaged with the English, and his army routed. Being thus completely overpowered, and left without any resource, he formed the resolution of throwing himself on the generosity of England. He was received with great ceremony

20. What change of government next took place? What were the chief acts of Bonaparte? 21. Where was he defeated? Describe the Russian campaign. 22. Who then became king? What attempt did Napoleon

on board an English frigate, but instead of being allowed to live privately in England, as he had expected, he was basely conveyed to the rocky island of St. Helena, where he was kept in the closest captivity till his death which occurred in 1821.

23. Louis XVIII. was succeeded by his brother Charles X., the principal event of whose reign was the conquest of Algiers. He reigned till 1830, when a new revolution drove him from the throne. Louis Philippe, duke of Orleans, was made king of the French, and a constitution adopted. Louis had few personal qualities to recommend him, so that he soon became unpopular, and in 1848, he, in his turn, was expelled from the throne, and France again proclaimed a republic. Louis Napoleon, a nephew of the great emperor, was elected President, but soon after assumed the imperial power, and was proclaimed emperor in 1852, under the title of Napoleon the Third. From the period of his accession, the emperor has governed France with much wisdom and moderation, and is every where regarded as the friend of order and religion. When his Holiness, Pius IX., was driven from his pontifical throne by his rebellious subjects, incited by emissaries from abroad, it was reserved for France to restore him to his throne, an act which Napoleon subsequently confirmed. Guided by the people's energies and the national valor the war with Russia was brought to a final conclusion in 1856.

### CHRONOLOGY OF FRANCE.

	A. C.
Frank monarchy founded by Pharamond, about . . . . .	480
Clovis, king of France, . . . . .	581
Charles Martel defeats the Saracens, . . . . .	732

make? 23. Who succeeded Louis XVIII? What happened in 1830? Describe the reign of Louis Philippe. What took place in 1848? Who

Pepin crowned king,	751
Charlemagne begins to reign,	786
Hugh Capet founds a new dynasty,	987
War with England begins,	1086
St. Louis, king,	1226
English kings attempt to seize the throne of France,	1328
Joan of Arc flourishes,	1422
English driven out,	1450
Francis I. began to reign,	1515
Calvanists begin civil war,	1560
Henry IV. triumphs,	1587
Protestants revolt,	1625
Louis XVI. put to death,	1793
Napoleon made emperor,	1804
Louis XVIII. raised to the throne,	1814
Battle of Waterloo,	1815
Charles X. expelled,	1830
Louis Philippe expelled,	1848
Louis Napoleon president,	1848
Napoleon III., emperor,	1852

## ENGLAND.

1. England, with Scotland and Wales, occupies an island north-west of the Continent of Europe, separated from France by the British Channel, and called Great Britain. West of it lies Ireland, another island. These four divisions constitute the Kingdom of Great Britain and Ireland, subject to the king or queen of England; but they are all of different origin, manners and language, and were long distinct states.

2. England was inhabited by Celtic and Belgian races, similar

was made emperor in 1852? What great act has since made Napoleon's name illustrious?

1. Describe England. 2. By whom was England originally inhabited?

A. C.

480

581

732

ned in 1830?

1848? Who

to those of Gaul, and had the same religion and customs, but they were much ruder and less civilized. Cæsar, the Roman general, invaded it 55 B. C., and some time after the birth of Christ it was reduced by other generals to a Roman province, although the Britons under Caractacus and Queen Boadicea made a gallant resistance. Agricola, one of the Roman commanders, did much to elevate the people; civilization extended; the Druidical worship fell; Christianity was introduced, and after the time of Constantine, spread over all the province.



The Tower of London, from the Thames.

3. The Romans never conquered the northern part of the island, and built several walls to protect their province against the Picts and Scots, by whom it was inhabited. As the empire declined these barbarous tribes crossed the wall and ravaged the country. Unable to defend themselves, or procure Roman aid,

Who first invaded it? How was the Roman power established? 3. What

the Britons purchased the aid of some Saxon and other German tribes then cruizing in the North Sea as pirates.

4. The Saxons soon repulsed the Picts and Scots, and turning on the Britons easily defeated them, and with the help of reinforcements seized the country, and being savage idolaters destroyed the churches and libraries, and made the country as barbarous as ever. The Britons fled to Wales and Cornwall in England, and to Britany in France, and their descendants are still to be found there. They, too, in these wars, lost much of their former refinement and civilization.

5. The Saxons established several kingdoms, 455, which are called together the Saxon Heptarchy. They subsisted separately till 800. During this period the country was again converted to Christianity by St. Augustine, St. Paulinus, and other monks, who also did much to civilize the Saxons, and soften their rude habits.

6. In 800, Egbert, king of the west Saxons, by treaty or war, united under his power all the kingdoms, and founded the English monarchy. In the last years of his reign, the country was invaded by the Danes, who under his successors ravaged the country, killed two successive kings, and compelled the next, Alfred, to wander about in disguise. After a while Alfred raised an army, defeated the Danes, and completely destroyed their power. He then became a very wise and good king; he maintained a powerful army and navy to protect the kingdom, reformed the laws, built churches and monasteries, to which

---

can you say of the inhabitants of the northern part? Whom did the Britons invite over? 4. What success had the Saxons? Describe them? What did they do? Whither did the Britons flee? 5. What did the Saxons establish? Who converted them? 6. Who united the various kingdoms?



schools were annexed, and in every way encouraged learning and piety, especially by his own example.

7. Athelstan, who came to the throne in 940, was a great monarch, and first assumed the title of king of England. He was a great patron of literature and commerce, and his friendship was courted by the other kings of Europe. Edwin the Fair, was a profligate prince, and persecuted the great St. Dunstan who reproved him for his sinful life. The next king, Edgar, was noted for his splendor and magnificence, and was once rowed in a barge by dependant kings.

8. Ethelred II. came to the throne by the crime of his mother, who killed her step-son, Edward the Martyr, when he came to visit her. Ethelred was a weak and dissolute king. In his reign the Danes became troublesome again, and Ethelred, after trying to buy a peace, ordered all the Danes in England to be massacred. On this, Sweyn, king of Denmark, came over and drove Ethelred into France, but as both soon died, a war ensued between Edmund, son of Ethelred, and Canute, son of Sewyn. Both were very brave, and they at last divided the country, but Edmund was assassinated, and Canute became king of all England.

9. Canute was one of the greatest kings of his day ; he ruled over England, Denmark and Norway. After his accession in England, he became a good and pious man, and treated all his people with great justice, showing no distinction between Dane and Saxon, and doing all he could to soften the ferocity of his warriors, by the example of his own piety. His flatterers called

---

What people soon after invaded England? Who delivered the country? What can you tell of King Alfred? 7. What was the character of Athelstan? Whom did Edwin persecute? What was the character of Edgar? 8. How did Ethelred II. ascend the throne? What happened in his reign? Who finally divided the kingdom? Which survived? 9. What can you

him king of kings, and to rebuke them, he had a seat placed on the sea shore, and ordered the waves not to approach ; but when they came up around him, he rose, and taking his crown off his head, placed it on a crucifix in the cathedral of Winchester, and never wore it again. He died in 1035, soon after returning from a pilgrimage which he made to Rome.

10. After the short reigns of his two sons, Edward, a son of Ethelred, was made king. He was so holy a man, and so good a king that, after his death, he was canonized as a saint. During his reign, the people enjoyed great peace, and the laws which he compiled were so just, that the English in after years, never asked anything better than the customs and laws of Edward the Confessor, by which name he is known in history. At the Reformation, however, they forgot him, and insulted his remains to please a tyrant.

11. As Edward left no children, Harold, a powerful nobleman, was made king, but William, duke of Normandy, claimed the throne, and having gained Hardrada, king of Norway, prepared to attack him. Hardrada invaded England in the north, but was defeated and killed by Harold in a bloody battle. William himself landed in the south. Harold marched against him ; but in the battle of Hastings, A. D. 1066, lost his throne and his life. He was the last of the Saxon kings.

12. William the Conqueror, was the first of the Norman line, and besides being king of England, was duke of Normandy in France. While he was there on a visit, the English, who were oppressed by the Normans, rebelled, but were at last

---

tell of Canute. 10. What was the character of Edward the Confessor? 11. Who was raised to the throne on his death? Whom did Harold defeat? By whom was he defeated? 12. What can you tell us of William? Why

defeated, and William ever after treated them very cruelly and the people would have been deprived of every right, had not the clergy constantly contended for their liberties. For this reason William Rufus and his other successors persecuted St. Anselm, St. Edmund, and other holy bishops.

13. Henry II., who came to the throne in 1154, was the greatest prince of his time, from his mother he inherited England and Normandy, from his father Anjou and other provinces in France, and by his marriage he acquired Guienne also. Besides this, he invaded Ireland, invited by a treacherous prince of that country, and was the first English king who acquired any power there. He, like his predecessors, persecuted the Church, and caused the death of the holy archbishop St. Thomas à Becket, but Heaven punished him by raising up his own sons against him in his last days.

14. Richard the Lion-hearted, the next king, was a chivalrous prince, and distinguished himself greatly in the crusades, but England suffered in his absence. While returning from Palestine he was arrested and imprisoned in Austria by the duke of that country, but was at last liberated through the influence of the Pope. His brother John killed his nephew Arthur, and was deprived of all his possessions in France. He was a tyrant, oppressed the Church and the people, so that at last the barons, led by Stephen Langton, Archbishop of Canterbury, forced him, in 1215, to sign the Magna Charta, or Great Charter, from which all our liberties are derived.

15. Henry III. was a weak prince, and his reign was one

did these Norman tyrants persecute the Church? 13. Describe the reign of Henry II. What were his possessions? What country did he conquer? What holy bishop was killed at his instigation? 14. What was the character of Richard? Describe his adventures? 15. What can you tell of

cont  
like p  
the c  
sessio  
son P  
of th  
Robe  
in the

16.  
defeat  
a wea  
wife i  
bitiou  
Edwa  
the F  
spite o

17.  
depose  
ning p  
Fren  
knowl  
ing En

18.  
he was  
grew  
claime  
his son

John?  
of Edw  
tell of  
Describ

continued scene of civil war ; but his son Edward I. was a war-like prince. Finding Scotland divided by factions he conquered the country, and though opposed by Wallace, maintained possession of it. He also reduced the Welsh, and made his eldest son Prince of Wales, a title which still belongs to the eldest son of the English sovereign. In 1306 the Scots revolted under Robert Bruce, and Edward died while marching against them in the following year.

16. His son Edward II. continued the war, but was totally defeated by Bruce, at Bannockburn, and lost Scotland. He was a weak prince, and was put to death at the instigation of his own wife in 1327. Edward III. was an able monarch, but very ambitious ; he claimed the throne of France, and with his brave son Edward the Black Prince, invaded that country, and defeated the French in two great battles at Crecy and Poitiers, but in spite of all his victories could not conquer any part of the country.

17. He was succeeded by his grandson Richard II., who was deposed and put to death by his cousin Henry IV., a very cunning prince. His son, Henry V., invaded France, defeated the French at Agincourt, married the king's daughter, and was acknowledged heir to the French crown when he died in 1422, leaving England and France to his son Henry, only a few months old.

18. The reign of Henry VI. was one of great trouble ; while he was a child the English were driven out of France ; when he grew up, the duke of York, as the king was weak in mind, claimed the regency. A war ensued, the duke was killed, but his son was proclaimed king as Edward IV. Many battles

John? What was forced from him? 16. What can you tell of the reign of Edward I? What was the character of Edward II? What can you tell of Edward III? 17. Who succeeded him? Who deposed Richard II? Describe the reign of Henry V. 18. What took place during the reign

were fought, but at last Henry and his son were put to death, and Edward remained sole king.

19. Edward left two sons, both very young ; so that his brother Richard usurped the throne and put them to death ; but the earl of Richmond, a distant descendant of Edward III., attacked him, and having defeated him at Bosworth, in 1485, took the title of Henry VII. This battle ended the long civil war which had deluged England in blood, and destroyed most of her ancient nobility. It is called the war of the Roses.

20. Henry VII. married a daughter of Edward IV. and thus united both parties. His reign was peaceful, but he was very avaricious, and used every means to accumulate money. His son Henry VIII. was as lavish as his father had been miserly. He was a dissolute prince, and married six wives, three of whom were beheaded by his orders. He commenced the Reformation in England, because the Pope would not grant him a divorce from his first wife, Catharine of Arragon. Having spent all the money left by his father, he next suppressed all the monasteries and squandered the money in his pleasures, and put many excellent men to death. To complete his wickedness he denied the authority of the Pope, declared himself head of the English Church, was excommunicated and died impenitent.

21. On his death the crown descended to his son Edward, whose uncle, the duke of Somerset, made himself regent, and reigned in the name of Edward. He put his brother to death, and with Cranmer, abolished the Catholic religion, compiled the Book of Common Prayer, and introducing a new worship, he

of Henry VI? 19. Who usurped the throne on Edward's death? By whom was Richard defeated and killed? 20. Whom did Henry VII marry? What was the character of his reign? What was the character of Henry VIII? What are the events of his reign? 21. Who usurped

thus founded the Church of England. The duke of Northumberland, whom he had endeavored to assassinate, had him arrested, condemned and executed, and then succeeded him as regent.

22. Edward soon after began to decline, and as Mary, the next heir, was known to be a Catholic, those who had introduced the new religion began to tremble and resolved to exclude her. Induced by Northumberland, Edward, still a boy, made a will, leaving the crown to Lady Jane Grey, daughter-in-law of Northumberland. On Edward's death she was proclaimed queen; but Mary raised her standard and all crowded around her; Northumberland was forsaken by his army, taken and punished, and the usurper sent to the Tower, 1553.

23. Mary was now crowned; she was daughter of Henry VIII., and Catherine his first and injured queen; she had been treated with great indignity in the reigns of her father and brother; an attempt had just been made to deprive her of her lawful inheritance, yet she gave way to no revenge and washed out none of her wrongs in blood. Cranmer and most of the reformers were guilty of treason; this she forgave, but their infidelity to their vows she believed too great to pardon; they were tried and condemned under former laws, for she passed none against the reformers.

24. She soon after restored the Catholic religion, and married Philip, son of the Emperor Charles V.; but her reign was not tranquil; the Protestant party several times rebelled, and at last Jane Grey was executed, as the only means of destroying

---

the power on his death? What did they abolish? Who displaced Somerset? 22. What was Edward induced to do? What became of Jane? 23. Who was now crowned? What had she been? How did she punish the rebels? 24. Whom did she marry? Who disturbed her reign? What



the pretext of rebellion. During her reign the English navy, by its connection with Spain, first rose to importance ; but Calais, the last English foothold in France, was lost by treachery.

25. On her death, her sister Elizabeth, daughter of Anne Boleyn, came to the throne and restored the Somerset religion. She was a great queen, but a bad and profligate woman. She aided the Netherlands against Spain ; supported the Protestants in France ; reduced Ireland ; fomented troubles in Scotland, and when Mary, queen of Scots, fled to her for protection, kept her nineteen years in prison and then caused her to be executed. That she persecuted the Catholics in her own dominions is generally deemed so slight a fault that it is often forgotten.

26. On her death, James VI., king of Scotland, was the next heir, and became king of the whole island, as James the First. As son of Mary, the Catholics welcomed him, and expected from him some relief ; they were cruelly disappointed, however, for James instead of lightening their burden, made it still heavier. The Catholics of Ireland, especially, were grievously wronged and oppressed during his reign, much of their property being taken from them by confiscation. Some of James' English subjects formed a plot to destroy him and his parliament by gunpowder. It was discovered, however, in time to prevent it. Some of the conspirators were taken and executed. This is known as the Gunpowder Plot. The rest of James' reign was tranquil ; he made no wars except on his own subjects.

27. His son, Charles I. became involved in troubles with his

---

made the death of Jane necessary? 25. Who succeeded Mary? What religion did she restore? What was her character? Describe her reign? 26. Who succeeded her? What did the Catholics expect? Did James answer their expectations? 27. Describe the reign of Charles I? What

parlia  
religi  
again  
to the  
repub  
self p  
in En  
land  
was r

28.  
place  
king,  
succe  
as su  
king  
thron  
Orang  
and p  
raised  
of Ja  
Boyne  
wards  
the F

29.  
and S  
liam v  
war.  
dangh

became  
Cromw



parliament ; Ireland and Scotland both rose to obtain civil and religious freedom, and in England, the parliament took up arms against the king. In this civil war Charles was defeated, fled to the Scots, was sold to the parliament, and put to death. A republic was then formed, but Oliver Cromwell soon made himself protector with absolute power. He put down all opposition in England, ravaged Ireland like a demon, and subdued Scotland which had proclaimed Charles II. Powerful at home, he was respected abroad, but died full of anxiety and suspicion.

28. After Cromwell's death Charles II. was recalled and placed on the throne, in 1660. He was an easy, voluptuous king, and his reign is a series of plots and intrigues. He was succeeded by his brother, James II., who was a Catholic, and as such disliked. In early life a brave and prudent man, as a king he was rash and obstinate. A plot was formed to dethrone him and place his nephew and son-in-law, William of Orange, on the throne. William landed with an army, in 1688, and pursued James to Ireland, where a large army had been raised to assist him. The Irish made a gallant stand on behalf of James, but were at length defeated at the Battle of the Boyne, July 12th, 1690. James then fled to Dublin, and afterwards to France, where he lived for many years, supported by the French king.

29. William and his wife Mary were now proclaimed ; Ireland and Scotland refused to submit, but were finally reduced. William was one of the best generals of his day, and very fond of war. His wife died before him, and on his death, Anne, another daughter of James II., came to the throne. She is generally

---

became of him? Who then seized the power? 28. Who was restored on Cromwell's death? What was his character? 29. What was the char-

called the good Queen Anne, and except in her conduct to her father, deserves respect. In her reign many great authors as Pope, Swift and others flourished, and the duke of Marlborough raised the glory of England by his victories over the French.

30. As Anne had no children, and Catholics were excluded from the throne, the crown passed to the most remote heir, George, elector of Hanover. Prince James, the brother of Anne, attempted to recover his father's throne, but was defeated in Scotland, and George reigned undisturbed. His successor, George II., was engaged in several wars, and also defeated another attempt of the grandson of James II. In a war with France, his English and New England troops conquered Canada, which has ever since belonged to England.

31. George III., who came to the throne in 1760, had a long and eventful reign of sixty years. England soon after his accession possessed all North America north of Mexico and west of the Mississippi; but in 1775 part of these revolted, a general war ensued, and England, attacked by France, Spain, and Holland, lost all her colonies, except Canada. In India, however, she greatly extended her conquests, and raised a formidable empire. When the French revolution broke out, England took an active part, and from 1789 to 1815 was almost constantly at war, and at last humbled the power of France.

32. George IV. succeeded his father, but except the passage of an act granting Catholics some rights as citizens, his reign

acter of James II? 30. Who conquered England? Describe his character? Who succeeded him? Who flourished in her reign? Who succeeded Anne? Who attempted to obtain the throne? Describe the reigns of George I and George II. 31. What are the chief events of the reign of George III? 32. What took place under George IV? Who is now

was n  
IV., u  
ost A  
cessfu  
ing of  
and s  
which

Britain

Boadicea  
Roman  
Saxons  
England  
Egbert  
Alfred  
Canute  
St. Edm  
Norman  
St. Tho  
Ireland  
Magna  
Scotland  
Edward  
War of  
End of  
Henry  
Somers  
Jane G  
Elizabeth  
James  
Charles  
Cromwel  
Monarch

queen  
chief e

was not remarkable. He was succeeded by his brother, William IV., and on his death England fell to Victoria, Hanover to Ernest Augustus. During Victoria's reign, Canada made an unsuccessful attempt to become free, a war with China led to the opening of several ports, the British power in India was extended, and she, with the aid of France, waged a war with Russia which was closed by the treaty of Paris in 1856.

### CHRONOLOGY OF ENGLAND.

Britain invaded by Cæsar, . . . . .	B. C.	55
Boadicea defeats the Romans, . . . . .	A. D.	61
Romans leave England, . . . . .		426
Saxons enter England, . . . . .		447
England converted by St. Augustine, . . . . .		597
Egbert unites the Heptarchy, . . . . .		827
Alfred reigns, . . . . .		872
Canute reigns, . . . . .		1017
St. Edward, the Confessor, . . . . .		1041
Normans conquer England, . . . . .		1066
St. Thomas à Becket murdered, . . . . .		1170
Ireland invaded, . . . . .		1172
Magna Charta granted, . . . . .		1215
Scotland invaded, . . . . .		1285
Edward III. claims the French throne, . . . . .		1338
War of the houses of York and Lancaster begins, . . . . .		1400
End of the war, and succession of Henry VII., . . . . .		1485
Henry VIII. makes himself head of the Church, . . . . .		1534
Somerset founds the Church of England, . . . . .		1547
Jane Grey usurps the throne, . . . . .		1553
Elizabeth begins to reign, . . . . .		1558
James VI. of Scotland, king of England, . . . . .		1603
Charles I. beheaded, . . . . .		1649
Cromwell protector, . . . . .		1654
Monarchy restored, . . . . .		1660

queen? What separation took place at her accession? What are the chief events of her reign?

England conquered by a Dutch army, . . . . .	1688
House of Brunswick succeeds, . . . . .	1714
England loses American colonies, . . . . .	1783
England opposes French Republic, . . . . .	1793 to 1815

## SCOTLAND.

1. Scotland lies north of England, and consists of two parts, the Highlands and Lowlands. The coast is much indented by bays, and several ranges of mountains traverse the country. Its chief mineral resource is coal which abounds in the south.

2. The original inhabitants of Scotland were the Picts, who were, however, at a very early period, subdued by the Scots or Irish who occupied the country, and gave it its name. Its early history is obscure till the time of Fergus, who founded the monarchy in 503 A. D. Of his successors little is known for some centuries. They were constantly engaged in war with the Picts their neighbors, who made frequent incursions into their territory.

3. About the year 560, St. Columba visited Conal, king of the Albanian Scots, and received from him the grant of the island of Tona, one of the Hebrides, where the Saint then founded an abbey, very famous in after times. Aidan, the successor of Conal, was solemnly inaugurated by St. Columba in 574. He is the most distinguished of all the Irish or Dalriadic kings of Scotland, and appears to have been an able prince, and a successful general. After him there is little worthy of notice in the history of Scotland, till the year 834, when Kenneth Mac Alpin conquered the Picts, and uniting their territories with his

1. Describe Scotland? 2. Who were the original inhabitants? Who is the founder of the monarchy? When was it dissolved? 3. Who restored it? Who compelled the Britons to call in the Saxons? Who was

own, became king of Scotland, properly so called. Kenneth was a brave and prudent prince, governed his people well, and was a powerful protector of the church.

4. After this, many of the Picts retired to Denmark, and instigated the Danes to invade Scotland, and for a long time Scottish history is taken up with Danish wars. Gregory the Great, a valiant and good king, subdued the Danes and Britons, and invaded Ireland. Duncan, who ascended the throne in 1033, defeated the Danes in several battles, and did much to improve the character of his people. After a reign of seven years he was murdered by Macbeth, who usurped the throne.

5. Macbeth reigned for ten years in peace, when his tyranny induced Malcolm, the son of Duncan, to endeavor to recover his crown. Edward the Confessor aided him with an army, and Macbeth was defeated and killed after several years' war, 1057. Malcolm was several times at war with William I. and William II. of England.

6. David I. renewed the war against Stephen, and it was continued from time to time by his successors, and proved very injurious to Scotland. In 1285 the crown fell to Margaret, the Maid of Norway, but as she died on her way to Scotland, the direct line failed, and twelve competitors claimed the crown. In 1292, John Baliol was made king by Edward I. of England, who deposed him again in 1296, and governed Scotland himself.

7. In 1306, Robert Bruce was acknowledged king, and maintained a vigorous war till 1314, when he gained the glo-

the first king of all Scotland? 4. What can you tell of Gregory? Of Duncan? 5. What was the fate of Macbeth? Who first began a war with the Normans? 6. Who continued it? Who became queen in 1285? What happened on her death? Who at last seized the crown? 7. Who restored the Scotch line? Describe his reign. 8. Describe the

rious battle of Bannockburn, and freed Scotland. At this battle he drew up his army very skillfully, and in front dug pits, full of sharp stakes and covered over, so as not to be noticed; the English knights rushed into these, were thrown into confusion, and easily killed. Robert Bruce was an excellent king, and restored happiness to his country.

8. His son David, while a child, was driven out by the English, who made Edward Baliol king, but Robert Stuart, the regent, at last overthrew the English, and restored David; yet the king soon after invading England, was defeated by Queen Philippa, and kept a prisoner for eleven years. The rest of his reign was spent in peace.

9. On the death of David, the house of Stuart began in 1370. They were a most unfortunate family. Robert II. died of grief for the loss of his son killed by his brother; James I. was killed by another of his uncles; James II. died in battle in England; James III. a tyrannical prince, in a battle with his own people who had revolted; James IV. was killed at the battle of Flodden; James V. died of grief at the revolt of his nobles.

10. Mary, who succeeded James V., is one of the most famous persons in history. She was educated in France, and married Francis II.; during her absence great troubles arose in Scotland. John Knox began the Reformation in Scotland; churches and monasteries were destroyed, and the queen insulted on her return. Her second husband, Darnley, was murdered, and herself imprisoned by her own brother, who was false to her and to his religious vows. She escaped, raised an army, but was

---

reign of David. 9. What house succeeded in 1370? What can you tell of the kings of this family? 10. Describe the reign of Mary. 11. What

defeat  
Eliza  
11  
Pres  
comp  
Eliza  
Since  
even  
again  
Engl  
liam  
tion.  
war,  
Jame  
death  
treat  
12  
unite  
rebel  
II. o  
Edwa  
Defea  
nally  
13  
and t  
her b  
  
happ  
Charle  
Anne's  
was th

defeated and fled to England. There she was imprisoned by Elizabeth for nineteen years, and at last put to death.

11. Her son, James VI., was brought up by her enemies a Presbyterian, and during his reign the Protestant religion was completely established. In 1603 he became, by the death of Elizabeth, king of England also, and proceeded to London. Since that time the two kingdoms have been united, and few events peculiar to Scotland occurred. The Scotch revolted against Charles I., who endeavored to introduce the Church of England into Scotland, and finally surrendered him to his Parliament in 1646, when he had thrown himself on their protection. They afterwards proclaimed Charles II. and renewed the war, but were defeated at Worcester in 1650. On the fall of James II., the Scotch remained faithful to him; but on the death of Dundee, submitted. They were afterwards very cruelly treated by William III.

12. In the reign of Anne, the two kingdoms were completely united, and Scotland lost her own parliament. In 1715 a rebellion broke out intended to place James, the son of James II. on the throne, but it was defeated; in 1745, Charles Edward, James' son, landed, and at first met with great success. Defeating an English army he advanced into England, but finally retreated, and was totally overthrown at Culloden in 1745.

13. The Scotch showed great fidelity to the Stuart family; and these attempts to restore them lost Scotland the blood of her bravest sons who perished on the scaffold, or the field; her

---

happened under James VI? What did the Scotch do in the reign of Charles I? What on the fall of James II? 12. What was done in Anne's reign? When did rebellions break out in Scotland? 13. What was the effect of these? What events have since occurred?



noble families were reduced to poverty; the highland clans broken up, and the country rendered too weak to resist. Since then no event of importance has occurred, except the secession of a large body of the people from the Established Church and the formation of a Free Kirk.

### CHRONOLOGY OF SCOTLAND.

	A. D.
Monarchy founded by Fergus, . . . . .	503
Aidan Inaugurated by St. Columba, . . . . .	574
Kenneth II. king of all Scotland, . . . . .	842
Duncan, king in . . . . .	1033
Margaret dies, and civil war begins . . . . .	1286
Robert Bruce, king in . . . . .	1306
House of Stuart begin, . . . . .	1370
Mary dethroned, . . . . .	1568
James ascends the English throne, . . . . .	1603
Scotch rise against Charles I, . . . . .	1641
Scotch proclaim Charles II, . . . . .	1650
Revolt in favor of James III, . . . . .	1715 & 1746

### I R E L A N D.

1. Ireland is a large and fertile island, lying west of Great Britain. It is divided into four provinces, formerly kingdoms; these are Leinster, Ulster, Connaught and Munster. The chief river is the Shannon, which empties into the Atlantic.

1. Describe Ireland? 2. Who were the original inhabitants? What

2. The early inhabitants were a Celtic race, more civilized and refined than the Britons; by intercourse with the Phœnicians and Carthaginians, they had advanced greatly, and in some branches of manufacture attained great excellence. They were called Scots, and after extending to Great Britain gave their name to the northern part.



Ireland

3. Heber and Heremon, who led a colony from Spain, are said to have founded the Irish monarchy about a thousand years before the Christian era. Ollamh Fodla, who reigned

---

were their names? 3. Who founded the Irish monarchy? Who freed

680 B. C. established the seat of government at Tara, and compiled a body of laws, and settled the form of government, giving the chief power to a general assembly which met every three years. He also founded a school for the education of his people.

4. Conary the Great, who reigned at the same time as Augustus, had a long and happy reign, during which the country enjoyed peace and plenty. About the close of the first century the common people rebelled, cut off the king and most of the nobility, and elected Carbre their chief to fill the throne; a civil war ensued which lasted twenty-five years, when Tuathal, a prince of the royal family, recovered the throne.

5. Cormac, in the third century, was a great and magnificent king, an able soldier, and yet a great patron of learning and art. Niall the Great, who was crowned in 379, was the next great monarch; he frequently invaded England and Brittany, and was at last killed in France. His nephew, Dathy, followed his example, and with his countrymen in Scotland frequently invaded Britain; after ravaging much of France he was killed by lightning at the foot of the Alps.

6. During the reign of his successor, Laogaire, a Breton named Patrick, who had been a slave in Ireland, was sent by the Pope to convert the country. He arrived at Tara on the night before a great Pagan festival, and in defiance of the law lighted a fire. On being brought before the king he preached the gospel, converted many, and obtained the royal protection. In a few years the whole country 432 A. C.

---

the seat at Tara? 4. Who reigned at the same time as Augustus? What happened towards the close of the first century? 5. What can you tell of Cormac? Of Niall the Great? Of Dathy? 6. What hap-

WAS  
St.

7.

learn

few

pend

and

Dan

yout

his o

their

Grea

estab

but

the v

Clon

of B

8.

tract

mot,

whom

lish

Rode

9.

sough

pened

What

defeat

was th

then c

conqu

was converted, being the only one converted without martyrdom. St. Patrick is ever since honored as the Apostle of Ireland.

7. Ireland now advanced rapidly, and soon became the seat of learning and civilization in the west. Of the subsequent kings, few deserve mention, and most were engaged in wars with the dependant princes. In 837 the Danes began to invade the country, and committed great ravages. At last, in 866, Turgessius the Dane made himself king of Ireland, but after a time some Irish youths, disguised in female dresses, suddenly killed the king and his officers, and an Irish king was chosen. The Danes continued their aggressions till the reign of Brian Boru, surnamed the Great. That excellent prince defeated them in many battles, and established the greatest peace and tranquillity in his kingdom, but in 1039, the Danes, aided by some Irish princes, renewed the war. They were finally defeated in the memorable battle of Clontarf. The victory, however, was dearly purchased by the loss of Brian, who was killed in his tent by some Danish soldiers.

8. Ireland now enjoyed peace abroad, but was frequently distracted by civil wars. In 1168, while Roderic was king, Dermot, king of Leinster, fled to England, to escape from another whom he had wronged. Henry II. took his side, sent an English force into Ireland, and followed himself in 1172, when Roderic submitted to him, and the Irish monarchy ended.

9. For nearly fifty years the English, by war and oppression, sought to extend the *pale* or English part of the island, but in

---

pened in the reign of Laogaire? 7. What followed its conversion? What happened in 837? Who became king in 868? Who finally defeated the Danes? What was the character of Brian? 8. What was the state of Ireland after this? What happened in 1168? Who then conquered Ireland? 9. How long did the English carry on the conquest? Who was crowned in 1315? Describe his reign? When

and com-  
ernment,  
net every  
on of his

time as  
which the  
se of the  
king and  
o fill the  
ars, when  
arone.

d magnifi-  
f learning  
, was the  
and Brit-  
v, Dathy,  
Scotland  
France he

a Breton  
as sent by  
ara on the  
of the law  
e preached

432 A. C.

Augustus?  
. What can  
What hap-

1315 Edward Bruce landed with 6000 Scotch troops, was joined by the Irish, crowned king, and for three years carried on a vigorous war, but was defeated and killed at Dundalk in 1318. The war between the two races continued, however, and in 1367 the Parliament passed the Statute of Kilkenny, making it high treason to marry among the Irish, and punishing any of English origin who spoke their language, or even allowed an Irish horse to graze on his field.

10. The good government of Richard, duke of York, viceroy in 1449, attached the people to that family in the civil war of the Roses: but Ireland was still divided by the struggle of the two races, and the frequent wars of the chiefs and barons. In 1486, during the reign of Henry VII., Simnel, an impostor, claiming to be grandson of Richard, the viceroy, was proclaimed king, and crowned at Dublin, but soon after defeated in England.

11. In the reign of Henry VIII. the earl of Desmond endeavored to make himself king, by the help of France, and his relative, Lord Thomas Fitzgerald, raised a formidable rebellion. Soon after this the monasteries were suppressed, and in the next reign Somerset endeavored to introduce his new religion, as Elizabeth also did. During her reign John and Hugh O'Neil endeavored to throw off the English yoke, but failed, and the English now resolved to colonize Ireland with English settlers. James I. confiscated all Ulster, and settled many Scotch families there for this purpose.

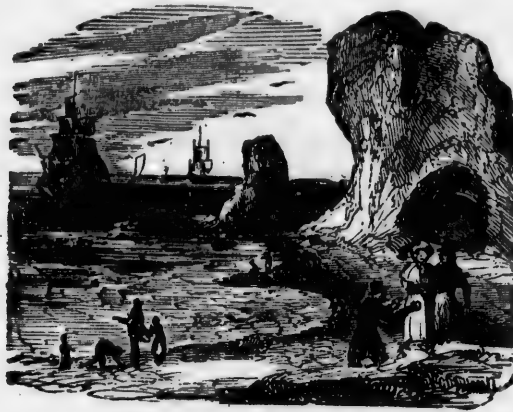
---

was the Statute of Kilkenny passed? 10. What good viceroy was sent over in 1449? What resulted from this? 11. Who aspired to the throne in Henry VIII's reign? Who attempted to introduce the Reformation? Who endeavored to free the country? What did James do?

12  
espo  
they  
comm  
mass  
many  
thus

13.  
Franc  
the fie  
of the  
was c  
sieges  
free e  
as the  
gover  
12. W

12. During the civil war in the time of Charles I., the Irish espoused his cause and formed the Confederation of Kilkenny; they were at first victorious, but in 1649 Cromwell took the command of the English forces, and defeating the confederates, massacred the people without mercy, completely desolating many counties. These he colonized with his followers, and thus strengthened the English power in Ireland.



Emigrants departing for America.

13. When James II. was dethroned in 1688, he fled to France, and landing in Ireland, called a parliament and took the field, but was finally defeated by William III., in the battle of the Boyne, in July, 1690. The Irish still held out, and it was only in the following year that Limerick, after repeated sieges, surrendered by a treaty, which secured to Catholics the free exercise of their religion. This treaty, memorable in history as the Treaty of Limerick, was basely violated by the English government.

12. What happened during the reign of Charles I? 13. What happened

14. From this time the history of Ireland is one long tale of oppression, down to 1778, when, alarmed by the American privateers, the Irish volunteers were formed to protect the country, which the English government could not do. When the danger passed, these volunteers would not lay down their arms till they obtained the freedom of the Irish parliament, but the English government soon plotted its overthrow. Factions disturbed the country, and in 1798 the Association of the United Irishmen formed a provisional government, and attempted, with French aid, to make Ireland independent. The plan was defeated, the leaders were arrested, and when the people rose, they were destitute of leaders; but the war did not end till 30,000 British troops, and at least 50,000 of the Irish, had fallen. Soon after this the Irish parliament was abolished by the act of Union in 1800.

15. During the present century little has been done by the government for Ireland. O'Connell, by incessant agitation, obtained, in 1829, the right to sit in Parliament for Catholics, and devoted the rest of his life to an attempt to restore the Irish parliament. His eloquence and devotedness made him dear to his countrymen, and a terror to England, but he failed in his great object. Since his death, an ineffectual attempt at revolution, famine, pestilence and proselytizing societies, have scourged the country.

---

when James II. was dethroned? 14. What is the history of Ireland since? What happened in 1778? What was formed in 1798? What was the result of this rebellion? 15. What has government done for Ireland this century? What did O'Connell obtain in 1829? What was his character?

Monar  
Ollamh

Rebell  
Niall t  
St. Pat  
Danes  
Brian  
Norma  
Edward  
Statute  
Confed  
Irish w  
Attempt  
O'Conn

1. C  
language  
empire  
of Aus  
Kingd  
Grand  
smaller

1. W  
tion?



## CHRONOLOGY OF IRELAND.

	B. C
Monarchy founded, . . . . .	1012
Ollamh Fodla establishes the government, . . . . .	680
	A. C
Rebellion of the commons, . . . . .	90
Niall the Great reigns, . . . . .	379
St. Patrick converts the country, . . . . .	432
Danes invade the country, . . . . .	837
Brian Boru finally overcomes the Danes, . . . . .	1014
Normans invade Ireland, . . . . .	1172
Edward Bruce, . . . . .	1315
Statute of Kilkenny, . . . . .	1367
Confederation of Kilkenny, . . . . .	1641
Irish war against the Dutch conqueror, . . . . .	1689
Attempted Revolution, . . . . .	1798
O'Connell gains Catholic Emancipation. . . . .	1829

## GERMANY.

1. Germany is properly the territory in which the German language is spoken. Before the French revolution it was an empire divided into circles. It now contains part of the Empire of Austria, part of the Kingdom of Prussia and Denmark, the Kingdom of Bavaria, Würtemberg, Hanover and Saxony, the Grand Duchies of Baden and Mecklenburg, and several other smaller states.

1. What is Germany? How was it divided before the French revolution? How is it now divided? 2. What were the Germans originally?



Archers of ancient times.

2 The Germans in early times consisted of several tribes, who lived in a barbarous state. One of these, the Teutons,

with t  
defeat  
routed  
Cimbri  
Gaul,  
by Cæ  
German

3. U  
were c  
under  
genera  
After  
each c  
century

4. R  
German  
Irishm  
soon b  
restor  
after h  
govern  
still el  
the em

5. T  
in 936

What c  
expelle  
many?  
comple  
pened i

with the Cimbri, invaded Gaul and Italy in 113 B. C., and defeated the Romans with great slaughter, but were finally routed by Marius, who crushed the Teutons in Gaul, and the Cimbri in Italy, 101 B. C. At a later date, they again invaded Gaul, under a king called Ariovistus, but were totally defeated by Cæsar, 54 B. C., and the Romans for the first time entered Germany.

3. Under the Roman emperors many districts of Germany were conquered by Drusus and Tiberius, but the Germans, under the brave Herman, defeated and killed the Roman general Varus, and drove the Romans beyond the Rhine. After this time the German tribes were constantly at war with each other or with the Romans, till the beginning of the fifth century, when they overran the Roman Empire.

4. Early in the eighth century, the Gospel was preached in Germany by St. Boniface, an Englishman, and St. Virgil, an Irishman, and when Charlemagne conquered the country, it soon became entirely Catholic. The Empire of the West was restored by him in 800, and on the division of his dominions after his death, Germany retained the imperial title. It was governed by the family of Charlemagne to 912, though it was still elective, and the emperor was chosen by the princes of the empire.

5. The greatest of succeeding emperors was Otho I., elected in 936. He established order in the empire, and reduced most

---

What country did they invade? Who defeated them? Who afterwards expelled them from Gaul? 3. What is the subsequent history of Germany? 4. By whom was the Gospel preached in Germany? What completed its conversion? Who established the empire? What happened in 912? 5. What two emperors deserve notice? 6. What can you

of Italy. St. Henry, one of his successors, was eminent for his holiness, but so good a sovereign, that when he sought to renounce the world and enter a monastery, the abbot after receiving him, ordered him, by virtue of his vow, to return.

6. Henry IV., who came to the throne in 1056, was a war-like prince, and during his long reign was present in over sixty battles. The chief event of his reign was however the dispute with the Popes which he began, but which lasted for many years after. His exploits, bravery, and talents cannot atone for his cruelty and violence, and he was at last deposed, and died wretchedly. Frederic Barbarossa was distinguished in the crusades, and died in Asia.

7. On the death of Conrad IV., the country fell into great confusion which continued for nearly twenty years, and is called the great interregnum. As foreign princes were elected, who never came to Germany, anarchy and disorders prevailed. At last, by the influence of one of the electors, Rudolph of Hapsburg, a Swiss knight was raised to the throne, 1273.

8. Of the election of Rudolph a pleasing story is told. When a poor, young knight, Rudolph met a priest about to cross a swollen torrent in order to carry the viaticum to a dying peasant. Rudolph dismounted immediately, and giving his horse to the priest, returned to his castle, and when the priest returned it, he refused, saying that he could never ride it to battle, but gave it to the Church. The priest became a bishop and prince elector, and never forgot the respect which Rudolph had shown to the Blessed Sacrament, and as he saw that Rudolph was as capable as he was pious, he had him

---

tell of Henry IV and Frederic Barbarossa? 7. What happened on the death of Conrad IV? Who was elected emperor? 8. What story is told

elect  
owed

9.

becam  
many  
betw  
bisho  
Henr  
quak

10

and  
electi

Luth  
Cath  
favor  
the L  
exces  
did th  
in Fr

11.

ceede  
count  
and s  
sions  
gress

12.

of Ro  
are the  
VII?  
sulted

elected, and only then did the emperor discover to what he owed his success.

9. Under Albert, the next emperor, the Swiss revolted, and became free. After this few events occur in the history of Germany, which is almost entirely taken up with the disputes between the emperors and Popes about the investiture of bishops, from which great troubles arose. In the reign of Henry VII. Germany suffered by pestilence, famine and earthquake, which desolated the country.

10. On the death of Maximilian, in 1519, Charles of Spain and Francis I. of France aspired to the throne, and on the election of Charles V. a war ensued. During his reign Luther, an Augustinian friar, began to preach against the Catholic doctrine, others followed his example, several princes favored the new doctrines, and seized the Church property. In the Low Countries the Anabaptists rose and committed great excesses. Zwinglius roused a civil war in Switzerland. Knox did the same in Scotland, while Cranmer in England, and Beza in France endeavored to overthrow the former religion.

11. From these changes, usually called Reformation, proceeded bloody wars, in which millions of lives were lost, whole countries demoralized, the finest works of architecture, painting and sculpture destroyed, more libraries burnt than in the invasions of the barbarians, and science and art checked in the progress which they were making.

12. In Germany these religious dissensions led to the Thirty

---

of Rodolph's election? 9. Who revolted under Albert's reign? What are the chief events after this? What happened in the reign of Henry VII.? 10. What happened in 1519? Who began to preach? What resulted in other countries? 11. What proceeded from the Reformation?

Years' war, which in 1648 ended in the establishment of the equality of rights of Catholics and Protestants. This war was chiefly in the reign of Ferdinand II., a vigorous prince, who attacked by Gustavus Adolphus of Sweden, by the king of France, and by his own Protestant subjects, maintained his power undiminished by the skill of his generals Tilly and Wallenstein. His successor, Ferdinand III., signed the peace of Westphalia, in 1648.

13. Leopold, the next emperor, was attacked by the Turks, and saved his capital only by the aid of John Sobieski, king of Poland. In 1700 he began the war of the Spanish succession against France, which lasted thirteen years, and involved nearly all Europe. Charles VI., his successor, died in 1740 without male issue, and was succeeded by his daughter Maria Theresa. The duke of Bavaria supported by several states attempted to seize the crown; but after many dangers Maria finally triumphed in 1748, when her husband was elected under the name of Francis I.

14. The empire was soon after attacked by the ambitious king of Prussia, and a war ensued which lasted seven years with no definite result. Joseph II. was a reformer, and made the Church in his dominions a mere creature of the state, for which he was much praised by those who dislike the independence of the Church. In the wars of the French revolution, Germany suffered greatly. In three successive wars the Austrians, though well commanded, were defeated by the

---

12. To what did the Reformation lead in Germany? What is the character of Ferdinand II? What peace closed the war? 13. What are the chief events of Leopold's reign? What happened on the death of Charles VI? 14. What war followed the accession of Francis I?

French  
former  
was t

15.  
Saxon  
kingd  
follow  
other  
in 18  
Confe  
are tr  
which  
retard  
rose i  
and a  
Empir  
in the

1. S  
Franc  
belong  
Notwi

What i  
French  
was the  
What h

1. De

French, and in 1806 the empire was abolished, and a new union formed, called the Confederacy of the Rhine, of which Napoleon was the head.

15. Francis II. was now emperor of Austria only; Bavaria, Saxony, Westphalia, Hanover and Würtemberg, were made kingdoms and the electorates abolished. A fourth war soon followed, in which Austria was again defeated; but with the other powers, she at last succeeded in overthrowing Napoleon in 1813. On the restoration of peace, in 1815, the Germanic Confederation was formed, in which matters of general concern are transacted by a Diet which meets at Frankfort, and over which Austria presides. A want of harmony, however, greatly retarded the progress of the country; and in 1848 the people rose in many states to obtain constitutions; Hungary revolted, and a general movement was made to restore the German Empire; but the whole was soon crushed, and matters remain in the same state as before.

---

## SWITZERLAND.

1. Switzerland is a small mountainous country, lying between France, Germany and Italy, and composed of parts formerly belonging to those countries, and speaking their languages. Notwithstanding this difference, they have generally lived in

---

What is the character of Joseph II? How did Germany fare during the French revolution? 15. What changes were made in 1806? What was the result of the next two wars? What confederation was formed? What happened in 1848?

1. Describe Switzerland. 2. What was Switzerland originally? What



great harmony, and have been distinguished for the republican form of government which they have long maintained.



Scenery of Switzerland.

2. Switzerland was originally a part of the Austrian dominions, but as they suffered from the tyranny of their governors, three cantons, Uri, Schweiz and Unterwalden, revolted in the reign of the Emperor Albert, and formed a league to oppose the Austrians. Of this confederacy William Tell was the soul; he had himself killed an Austrian governor, who had wantonly compelled him to shoot an apple from off the head of his only son. Tell, so the story goes, was an excellent archer, and shot the apple without hurting his child.

---

three cantons revolted? Tell the story of William Tell. 3. What

3. Albert, the emperor of Germany, marched against them, but was murdered on the way. His son Leopold, however, entered the country with a formidable army. The canton of Schwitz alone was ready to meet him. Thirteen hundred men posted themselves on the heights, around the narrow pass of Morgarten. As the Austrians entered, they rolled down rocks upon them, which crushed many foot and horse before them, and threw the whole army into confusion. Then the men of Schwitz rushed down and soon cut the whole army to pieces. This battle of Morgarten was fought in the year 1315: it secured the independence of the country which took its name from the brave canton of Schwitz.

4. The war was not ended, however. The Austrians did not give up all hope till they had been defeated in sixty battles, but as the three cantons had now been joined by others, and the republic of Switzerland formed, the Austrians at length ceased their efforts. Each canton preserved its independence, but the affairs of the whole country were transacted in a diet consisting of members from all the cantons. Under this government they enjoyed, for many years, great peace and happiness.

5. At the beginning of the sixteenth century, Zuinglius, a Swiss priest, adopted the ideas of Luther, and added others of his own. His preaching caused great trouble in the quiet republic: a civil war ensued, and Zuinglius died, sword in hand, on the field of battle. Soon after, Calvin, a French reformer, settled at Geneva, and obtaining despotic power, made that city the centre of Protestant Switzerland.

---

attempts did Austria make to subdue them? Describe the battle of Morgarten. 4. How many more battles were fought? 5. What occurred at the time of the Reformation? What was the result of Zuing-

6. When peace was restored, the cantons were about equally divided, and it was agreed that each should determine all questions of religion for itself. This state of things continued till 1846, when the Protestant cantons took up arms, and though at first defeated, at last, by the secret aid of England, compelled the Catholic cantons to close the monasteries, convents, and other religious houses. Since then the Catholic cantons have been deprived of freedom in religious matters.

---

## PRUSSIA.

1. Prussia is now a curious kingdom, consisting of two distinct parts, completely separated from each other, one bordering on France and the Rhine, the other on Russia. Both are advantageously situated, and are in a prosperous state. The people are all Germans, except in Posen, which is a part of Poland. Prussia is noted for its compulsory system of common schools, and the attempts of recent kings to make a uniform religion for the people.

2. The original inhabitants of Brandenburg, the basis of the kingdom, were a rude and barbarous race called Borussi. The country was finally subdued and converted by the Teutonic knights, about the time of the crusades. At the Reformation the last grand master made himself duke, and as his family

---

glius' preaching? 6. What was the result of these wars? What has recently occurred in Switzerland?

1. Describe Prussia? For what is it noted? 2. Who were the ori-

BOOK  
tion  
• 3.  
of F  
in 16  
cities  
state  
of hi  
royal  
succe  
lished  
drille

4.

in 174  
media  
from i  
thoug  
withst  
years?  
After  
kingd  
manuf

5.

first t  
Repub  
was a  
so sev

ginal i  
as an  
4. Wh

soon after intermarried with that of Brandenburg, the foundation of its fortunes was laid.

3. As an electorate, its history is not striking till the time of Frederic William, the great elector, who, at his accession in 1640, found the electorate desolate, the villages burnt, the cities in ruins, but who, by his valor and prudence, freed the state from all its enemies, and devoted himself to the happiness of his people. His successor, Frederic I., first assumed the royal title, which Austria, who needed his aid, tolerated. His successor, Frederic William, though rude in private life, established order and economy in his government, and raised a well drilled and effective army.

4. Frederick II., styled the Great, who came to the throne in 1740, was one of the greatest warriors of modern times. Immediately after his succession he invaded Austria, and wrested from it the province of Silesia: he next attacked Saxony, and though England, France and Austria united against him, he withstood them all during a war, which is called the "Seven years' war," and at last obtained an advantageous peace. After this he devoted himself to repair the losses which his kingdom had sustained, and did much to encourage agriculture, manufactures and commerce.

5. When the French revolution began, Prussia was one of the first to take up arms in the royal cause, but was defeated by the Republican generals. When Napoleon became emperor, war was again declared by Frederic William III., but he sustained so severe a defeat at the battle of Jena, in 1806, that he obtained

---

ginal inhabitants? By whom was it conquered? 3. What is its history as an electorate? Who was the last elector? Who was the first king? 4. What can you tell of Frederic the Great? 5. What part did Prussia

peace only by the loss of half his kingdom. On the fall of Napoleon he regained this and also the provinces on the Rhine.

6. Since that time there have been few important events except the religious persecution carried on for several years; the Catholics were the first to suffer, the archbishop of Cologne having been imprisoned; then Lutherans and Calvinists, who would not adopt the king's new system, were harassed in every way, and many in consequence emigrated to America. In 1848 Prussia was disturbed by risings of the people, several concessions were made, and the king attempted to secure the title of emperor of Germany, but failed in his attempt.

### CHRONOLOGY OF GERMANY.

	B. C.
Germany invaded by Cæsar, . . . . .	54
	A. C.
Christianity preached, . . . . .	782
Charlemagne conquers Germany and founds an empire, . . . . .	800
Empire made elective, . . . . .	912
Otho I. emperor, . . . . .	936
The great interregnum, . . . . .	1254 to 1273
Rudolph of Hapsburg elected, . . . . .	1273
Switzerland revolts, . . . . .	1307
War of succession, Charles V. and Francis I. . . . .	1519
Reformation began, . . . . .	1519
Thirty years' war, . . . . .	1618
Prussia made a kingdom, . . . . .	1700
War of succession—Maria Theresa and Duke of Bavaria, . . . . .	1740
Frederic II. king of Prussia, Hanover and Württemberg, . . . . .	1742

take in the French revolution? What happened in the wars with Napoleon? 6. What events have since occurred?

Bavaria and Saxony made kingdoms, . . . . .	1804
German Empire ends, . . . . .	1806
Germanic Confederation formed, . . . . .	1815
Revolutionary attempts in various parts, . . . . .	1848

### HOLLAND — BELGIUM.

1. Holland and Belgium are low but fertile and populous countries distinguished for the industry and prosperity of the people. They were formerly much engaged in commerce, but are at present employed chiefly in manufactures.

2. The early inhabitants of Belgium were of German origin; they were, after a long war, subdued by Cæsar, and their country, till the fall of the Roman Empire, formed part of the province of Gaul. After the time of Charlemagne it was part of the German Empire, but became independent in the tenth century, and remained so till annexed to Burgundy, in 1443. It subsequently passed to Charles V., king of Spain, in right of his father.

3. Under Philip I. a revolt broke out, and though Spain was in the zenith of her power, she failed to reduce seven of the provinces, which formed a republic, under a stadtholder in 1581. The new republic was soon distinguished for its maritime enterprize. Her fleets ruled the ocean, and distant colonies in America and the East contributed to its wealth, pros-

- 
1. Describe Holland and Belgium. 2. Who were the early inhabitants of Belgium? Give its early history. When did it pass to Spain?  
3. What took place in the reign of Philip II? For what was the new

perity, and power. The other provinces remained subject to Spain, but partook of the spirit of the rest.

4. The first stadtholder, William, and his successor Maurice, were brave and successful generals, and raised Holland to a high degree of prosperity. In 1652 Holland was at war with Cromwell, and the Dutch Admiral Van Tromp gained many victories. Soon after a revolution took place, by which the stadtholders were abolished, but in 1672 William, afterwards king of England, was made stadtholder, and by his ability as a general raised the martial renown of Holland; but the office was again abolished on his death in 1702, and not restored till 1747.

5. By the treaty of Utrecht, in 1713, Spain was forced to resign her Belgian provinces to Austria, which kept possession of them till the French revolution. Belgium was the first country invaded and subdued by the republican armies. Holland was then taken and annexed to France, under the name of the Batavian Republic. Napoleon subsequently formed it into the Kingdom of Holland, and gave the crown for a time to his brother Louis, but on the fall of the emperor, the A. C. 1815. stadtholder, or Prince of Orange, was made king.

6. The Kingdom of the Netherlands lasted fifteen years, but the Belgians, chiefly Catholics, being oppressed, revolted in 1830, and securing their independence, accepted as king, Leopold of Saxe-Coburg, who still reigns. The rest was styled the Kingdom of Holland, and remained subject to the house of Orange.

---

republic distinguished? 4. What events took place under the new government? 5. What change was made by the treaty of Utrecht? What changes took place in the French revolution? 6. What took place in 1830?

1. The  
other, bet  
isles, and  
and religi  
is not ver  
for comm

1. Descr





Fishermen of Norway

## DENMARK, NORWAY AND SWEDEN.

1. These three countries occupy two peninsulas facing each other, between the North Sea and the Baltic, with the adjacent isles, and are occupied by a people of similar origin, language and religion. Denmark embraces also two German duchies: it is not very fertile or populous, though advantageously situated for commerce. Sweden and Norway are fertile in the south,

- 
1. Describe Denmark, Norway and Sweden. 2. What were they

while the north supplies timber from its forests, and useful metals from the mines.

2. These countries were anciently called Scandinavia, and little is known of their early history. The Cimbri who invaded Italy in the time of Marius, came from Denmark, and soon after the Christian era the Swedes were famous as navigators. From the eighth to the eleventh centuries these countries sent out piratical fleets under sea-kings, which ravaged all the surrounding countries. The Danes, Normans, Angles and others came from these parts: they were at this time barbarous and cruel, and plunged in idolatry.

3. Civilization and Christianity were introduced into these countries by St. Anseharins and others, in the ninth century, but as Sweyn, king of Denmark, apostatized, it was not till his successor, Canute, conquered England that Christianity was firmly planted. Canute was the greatest monarch of his day: he ruled over England, Denmark and Norway, and Iceland and Greenland were subject to him. We have already spoken of him in the history of England.

4. After the time of Canute, the history of these countries is uninteresting till the reign of Margaret, who ascended the throne in 1387. She was queen of Denmark, and marrying the king of Norway, subdued Sweden. Her husband soon died, and she then became sole ruler of the three kingdoms. She was a woman of great ability, and by the treaty of Calmar formed the articles of the Union, and reigned with great glory for many years. After her death the kings remained in Denmark, while Norway and Sweden were oppressed by the Danes.

---

anciently called? What can you tell of the early history? 3 How was Christianity introduced? What can you tell of Canute? 4. De

5. Danis  
Gusta  
to Da  
closed  
the in

6. C  
time S  
acts w  
receiv  
of Sw  
a sever  
shamef  
day no  
propert

7. T  
crafty  
pretend  
off the  
penal l  
of Den  
recent p

8. In  
restore  
renounc  
land, wa

scribe th  
6. What  
ful Dalec  
attempts

5. About 1523 the Swedes grew weary of the tyranny of the Danish officers, and resolved to throw off the foreign yoke. Gustavus Vasa, son of a victim of Danish cruelty, fled for safety to Dalecarlia, a mining district: at a favorable moment he disclosed himself, aroused the people, and in a short time achieved the independence of Sweden.

6. Gustavus was now raised to the throne, and from this time Sweden becomes an important kingdom. One of his first acts was to introduce the Lutheran religion. Many refused to receive it, among the rest his brave Dalecarlians, the liberators of Sweden, but Gustavus sent an army against them, and after a severe struggle, nearly exterminated them. Severe and shameful laws were then passed against Catholics, and to this day no Swede can become a Catholic without losing all his property.

7. The king of Denmark, at that time Christian II., was crafty and tyrannical. While contending with Gustavus he pretended to be a zealous Catholic, but soon, like him, threw off the mask, and introducing Lutheranism, established it by penal laws like those of Sweden. From his reign the history of Denmark is not marked by any important events till a very recent period.

8. In Sweden, John, the son of Gustavus, endeavored to restore the Catholic religion, but overawed by the nobles, renounced it. His son, Sigismund, who was also king of Poland, was a Catholic, and after a short reign was dethroned.

---

scribe the reign of Margaret? 5. When did the Swedes revolt? 6. What were the chief acts of Gustavus? How did he treat the faithful Dalecarlians? 7. What was the character of Christian II? 8. What attempts were made to restore the Catholic religion in Sweden? De

In 1611 Gustavus Adolphus came to the throne; he was a great warrior. After defeating Denmark, Poland and Russia, he was entreated by the Protestants in Germany to aid them. In hopes of securing the imperial title, he took command of the Evangelical union, and for some years led the armies of the league, but was killed at the battle of Lutzen, in 1632, before the close of the 'Thirty years' war.

9. His daughter, Christina, was a remarkable woman. After reigning with great ability for twenty-one years, she resigned the throne to become a Catholic, preferring truth to the sceptre. She had obtained of the German emperor an indemnity for the expenses of the war, the rank of prince of the empire, and the provinces of Pomerania and Stettin.

10. In 1697 Charles XII. came to the throne, at the age of fifteen. Two years after Sweden was attacked by Russia, Poland and Denmark, but these powers soon found that they had roused a lion. In six weeks Charles compelled Denmark to sue for peace: marching then into Russia he defeated an army ten times as large as his own, at Narva, and took 30,000 prisoners. He then conquered Poland, deposed the king, and had another elected. Here he should have stopped; but advancing again into Russia, he was defeated at Pultowa, and fled to Turkey with a few hundred men. Having at last regained his liberty he returned to Sweden, which had been invaded and ravaged during his absence. Still bent on war, he attempted to conquer Norway, but was killed at the siege of a fortress in 1718.

11. The sceptre of Sweden passed, in 1771, to Gustavus III.,

---

scribe the reign of Gustavus Adolphus? 9. Describe the reign of Christina? 10. What can you tell us of Charles XII? 11. Who made

who  
abs  
He  
died  
Ber  
Indi  
in 1  
after  
12  
lean  
by E  
and  
her r  
Den  
Pome  
subdu

Canut  
Marga  
Gustav  
Christi  
Gustav  
Charles  
Sweden  
Bernad  
War be

himself  
the his  
pened a

who deprived the Senate of its privileges, and made himself absolute. His reign was peaceful and beneficial to his subjects. He was assassinated in 1792. His successor was deposed, and died of want in exile. In 1810, by the influence of Napoleon, Bernadotte, a French general, who had fought as a sergeant in India, was made Crown Prince, and succeeded to the throne in 1818. Before this, Norway had been annexed to Sweden, after having belonged for four centuries to Denmark.

12. During the wars of the French revolution, Denmark leaned to the side of France, and was attacked in consequence by England, who without a declaration of war, seized her fleet, and bombarded Copenhagen. This severe blow has crippled her naval power. In 1848, Holstein, a German duchy, which Denmark had received from Prussia in 1814, in exchange for Pomerania, revolted, but though aided by Prussia, was at last subdued.

### CHRONOLOGY.

	A. D.
Canute reigns, . . . . .	1015
Margaret founds the Union of Calmar, . . . . .	1397
Gustavus Vasa founds the Kingdom of Sweden, . . . . .	1523
Christian II. introduces Reformation into Denmark, about . . . . .	1523
Gustavus Adolphus, king of Sweden, . . . . .	1611
Charles XII. . . . .	1697
Sweden becomes absolute, . . . . .	1771
Bernadotte made crown prince, . . . . .	1810
War between Denmark and Holstein, . . . . .	1848

himself absolute in 1771? What has happened since? 12. What was the history of Denmark during the French revolution? What has happened since?

## POLAND.

1. Poland is not now a separate country. The part of Europe where the Polish language is spoken, includes large portions of Russia, Austria and Prussia. It is fertile, populous, and inhabited by a brave and industrious people, who have suffered greatly from oppression.

2. The Poles are of Slavonic origin, and occupied Poland about the year 550, under a chief named Lech. His successors governed until the time of Mieslas, under the title of dukes. This prince having married a Christian, embraced the faith in 965, and sent an embassy to Rome. His son, Boleslas the Great, assumed the title of king, conquered Moravia, Bohemia and Russia, and laid the foundation of Polish greatness.

3. In 1385, Hedwige was the heiress of the throne, but as her husband Jagellon, duke of Lithuania, was a Pagan, an interregnum ensued till he was converted and baptized. Sigismund I. was the most accomplished prince that ever reigned in Poland, and endeavored to elevate his subjects by inspiring them with a taste for art and science.

4. After the death of Sigismund the crown became elective, and kings of various families and nations were chosen. This led to great dissension and intrigue, and at last ruined Poland. Among these kings were Sigismund, king of Sweden, Henry III., king of France, and John Casimir, who had been a

- 
1. Describe Poland. 2. What is the origin of the Poles? Who founded the state? When were they converted? Who was the first king? 3. What happened in 1385? Give the character of Sigismund. 4. What happened after his death? What can you tell us of some of

cardi  
granc  
his ov  
defeat  
defeat  
1683,  
liver  
power  
5. a  
electio  
seized  
was m  
and o  
for lib  
defeat  
taken,  
cated,  
and Pr  
of Pola  
6. O  
remain  
the Pol  
persecu  
have be  
while t  
Poles re

these ele  
pened aft  
procedin  
Russians



cardinal. John Sobieski, who was elected in 1674, had been grand marshal of Poland, and had for several years, almost at his own expense, defended Poland against the Turks, whom he defeated in many bloody battles. After his election he again defeated them, and when Austria was attacked by them, in 1683, he marched to the relief of the German emperor, delivered Vienna, and in three battles completely overthrew the power of the Turks.

5. After this, neighboring powers began to interfere in the elections, and at last, in 1772, Russia, Prussia, and Austria seized several of the provinces. To avoid these evils, the crown was made hereditary in 1791, but the Russians entered Poland, and other provinces were seized. Kosciusko who had fought for liberty in America, made a brave resistance, but was defeated, nine thousand Poles slain before Warsaw, the city taken, and the last king, Stanislaus Poniatowski, having abdicated, the country was finally divided between Russia, Austria, and Prussia, and the emperor of Russia took the title of king of Poland.

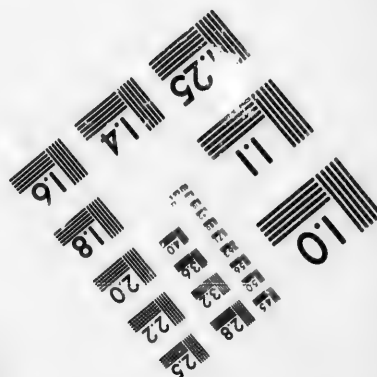
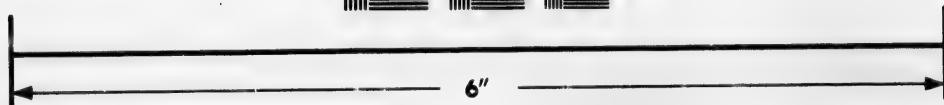
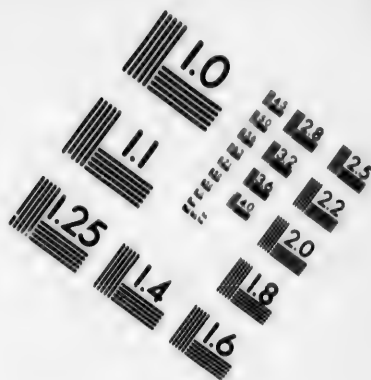
6. Of all the kingdom the little Republic of Cracow alone remained free. Russia, which took the greater part, has treated the Poles with great cruelty, and endeavored by unrelenting persecution to make them forsake the Catholic religion. Many have been put to death, or compelled to work as criminals, while thousands have been exiled to Siberia. In 1830 the Poles revolted, and for some time maintained a sanguinary war

---

these elective kings? Describe the reign of Sobieski? 5. What happened after this? What took place in 1772? Describe the subsequent proceedings? 6. What was the only part left free? How have the Russians treated the Poles? What took place in 1830?







# Photographic Sciences Corporation

**23 WEST MAIN STREET  
WEBSTER, N.Y. 14580  
(716) 872-4503**

18  
20  
22  
25

01  
01

with Russia, but unaided by any European power, they sank under the colossal force of Russia.

### CHRONOLOGY OF POLAND.

	A. D.
Polish power founded by Lech, . . . . .	550
Mieslas, first Christian duke, . . . . .	961
Queen Hedwige marries Jagellon, . . . . .	1385
Crown becomes elective, . . . . .	1585
Sobieski elected, . . . . .	1674
First partition, . . . . .	1772
Stanislaus abdicates, and second partition made in . . . . .	1793
Last partition, . . . . .	1795

### R U S S I A.

1. Russia is a large country embracing one half of the territory of Europe. The empire includes also all northern Asia and a large tract on the north-west coast of America. Russia itself is a well watered country bordering on the Northern Ocean, the Baltic, Caspian, and Black Seas, which are all connected by navigable rivers and canals. It possesses every variety of climate, although much of the country is extremely cold. The people are of Slavonic origin, and belong to the Greek rite, the emperor being head of the Church.

2. The Russians were a Slavonic race, who first appear in

1. Describe Russia. What is the religion? 2. When does it first ap-

history  
dimir.  
history  
there  
capital  
tion of  
embrac  
and m  
3. I  
of czar  
manov  
deposed  
had be  
impro  
Charles  
carried  
is the g  
of Mosc  
also sup  
founded  
the nobl  
his army  
the impr  
to Holla  
search of  
4. Af  
pear in hi  
existed?  
king? W  
Great. 4.

history in the fourth century. Ruric, the first duke of Wladimir, is considered the founder of the Russian Monarchy. The history of the dukes is long obscure, and in the tenth century there existed a commercial republic, of which Novgorod was the capital. Intercourse with Constantinople led to the introduction of missionaries. In 955 Olga or Helen, regent for her son, embraced Christianity. Wladimir the Great aided its diffusion, and made his country rank among Christian states.

3. In the sixteenth century Ivan Basilowitz assumed the title of czar or king, and soon after the sceptre passed to the Romanov family, by whom it is still held. In 1689 Peter the Great deposed his brother, and ascended the throne. Hitherto he had been ignorant and profligate, but he now determined to improve himself and his people. Though at first defeated by Charles XII., he finally overthrew him at Paltowa; he also carried on a successful war with Turkey, but his chief renown is the government of Russia. He suppressed the patriarchate of Moscow, and made the Church a creature of the state. He also suppressed the strelitzes, a formidable body of troops, and founded a new capital, St. Petersburg, to break the power of the nobles. He was thus absolute, and turned his attention to his army and navy as well as to manufactures, agriculture, and the improvement of his subjects. He himself went in disguise to Holland to learn ship-building, and even visited England in search of knowledge.

4. After his death in 1725, five short reigns preceded the

---

pear in history? Who is the founder of the monarchy? What republic existed? How was the country converted? 3. Who was the first king? What family has since ruled? Describe the reign of Peter the Great. 4. What was the character of Elizabeth? Describe the reign

y sank

A. D.

550

961

1385

1585

1674

1772

1793

1795

e terri-  
n Asia  
Russia  
orthern  
all con-  
every  
tremely  
to the

appear in

first ap-

accession of his daughter Elizabeth, in 1740. She was a benevolent woman and able princess, and during her reign compiled a code of laws, and founded universities at Petersburg and Moscow. The Empress Catharine assassinated her husband, Peter III., and seized the throne. She was a bad woman, but a bold and enterprising sovereign. She extended her empire by conquests from Turkey, Persia, and Poland, and was meditating the entire subjugation of Turkey, when she died in 1796.

5. Paul was assassinated after a short reign, and his son, Alexander, raised to the throne. He was an able prince, and the head of the alliances against Napoleon. In 1805 he formed a coalition with Austria and Prussia, but defeated at Austerlitz and Friedland, made peace. In 1812 Napoleon invaded Russia with the largest army ever seen in modern times, and fought his way to Moscow, where he intended to winter, but the Russians set fire to the city, and Napoleon was compelled to retreat in mid-winter, pursued by Alexander, who, with the allies, entered Paris in 1814, and forced Napoleon to abdicate.

6. Nicholas, the present emperor, suppressed the revolt of the Poles, whom he has since greatly persecuted; he afterwards waged an unsuccessful war with the Circassians, and has just invaded Turkey with a powerful army.

### CHRONOLOGY OF RUSSIA.

Russian power founded by Ruric,	A. D.
Olga becomes a Christian,	839
	955

- 
- of Catharine II. 5. What happened in the reign of Alexander  
6. Who is the present emperor?

Ivan Bas  
Peter the  
Catharine  
Russia in

Greece fir  
Athens fou  
The Trojan  
Rome found  
Rome beco  
Persians in  
Philip over  
Alexander  
Rome cong  
"  
"  
Roman Em

Constantine  
Empire div  
Franks fou  
Venice fou  
Saxons fou  
Lech found  
Goths found  
Saracens co  
Temporal p  
Charlemagn  
Gotricus fou  
Egbert unit  
Russian pow

Ivan Baslowitz, first king, . . . . .	1555
Peter the Great ascends the throne, . . . . .	1681
Catharine II. usurps the throne, . . . . .	1762
Russia invaded by Napoleon, . . . . .	1813

---

### GENERAL CHRONOLOGY OF EUROPE.

	B. C.
Greece first settled, . . . . .	1856
Athens founded, . . . . .	1556
The Trojan War, . . . . .	1184
Rome founded, . . . . .	753
Rome becomes a republic, . . . . .	509
Persians invade Greece, . . . . .	490
Phillip overthrows Grecian republics, . . . . .	338
Alexander begins to reign, . . . . .	336
Rome conquers Carthage and Spain, . . . . .	149
“ “ Greece, . . . . .	146
“ “ Gaul and Britain, . . . . .	55
Roman Empire begins, . . . . .	30
	A. D.
Constantine removes the seat of empire, . . . . .	306
Empire divided into East and West, . . . . .	395
Franks found a monarchy, . . . . .	420
Venice founded, . . . . .	452
Saxons found kingdoms in England, . . . . .	455
Lech founds a monarchy in Poland, . . . . .	550
Goths found a monarchy in Spain, . . . . .	583
Saracens conquer Spain, . . . . .	712
Temporal power of the Popes, . . . . .	774
Charlemagne crowned emperor, . . . . .	800
Gotricus founds the Kingdom of Denmark, . . . . .	801
Egbert unites the Saxon Kingdoms in England, . . . . .	827
Russian power founded by Ruric, . . . . .	839

A. D.  
839  
955

Alexander



Brian Boru, king of all Ireland, . . . . .	1002
Normans conquer England, . . . . .	1066
Kingdom of Portugal founded, . . . . .	1093
Genoa, a republic, . . . . .	1099
Normans invade Ireland, . . . . .	1172
House of Hapsburg in Germany, . . . . .	1273
Switzerland, a republic, . . . . .	1307
Turks enter Europe, . . . . .	1359
Denmark, Norway and Sweden united, . . . . .	1396
English driven from France, . . . . .	1450
Constantinople taken, . . . . .	1453
Saracens expelled from Spain, . . . . .	1492
Reformation, . . . . .	1517
Gustavus, first king of Sweden, . . . . .	1523
Prussia, a dukedom, . . . . .	1525
Portugal annexed to Spain, . . . . .	1580
Peter the Great established Russian power, . . . . .	1696
Prussia made a kingdom, . . . . .	1700
French revolution, . . . . .	1789
German Empire ends, . . . . .	1806
German Confederation formed, . . . . .	1815
General revolutions, . . . . .	1848

---



## MAP OF NORTH AMERICA.



## QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF NORTH AMERICA.

1. Bound North America.
  2. What three oceans touch North America? What two seas?
  3. What two large bays in the north? two large gulfs in the south?  
two straits in the north-east? straits in the north-west?
  4. What ranges of mountains in the west? what range in the east?
  5. What country and island in the north-east? What country in the  
north-west? What country occupies all the rest of the northern part?  
What republic in the centre?
  6. What republic west of the gulf of Mexico? What republic south  
of the gulf of Mexico? *Ans.* Guatemala, Nicaragua, Costa Rica, and  
Honduras. What island in the south-east?
  7. What island in the Polar Sea? What lakes in British America?  
What lakes between it and the United States? What river between  
them? *Ans.* St. Lawrence. What island at the mouth of the St. Law-  
rence?
  8. What large rivers in the United States? What river between the  
United States and Mexico? What peninsula in the south-east?
  9. What peninsula in the west of Mexico? In the south-east? What  
cape south of California? Which are the largest of the West India  
islands?
  10. What is the capital of Iceland? *Ans.* Riekiavik. Of the Russian  
Possessions? *Ans.* Archangel. Of British America? Of the United  
States? Of Mexico? Of Guatemala?
  11. Where is Cape Sable? Cape St. Lucas? Cape Farewell? Behring's  
straits? Alaska? What is Alaska? Where is California? Florida?  
The Rocky Mountains? Yucatan?
  12. Where is Quebec? Charleston? Austin? Mexico? Puebla?  
Monterey? San Salvador?
- 



Q. V  
A. A  
the Pac  
America  
has been  
Q. F  
A. A  
tains, im  
Q. H  
A. In  
long to I  
low these  
the centr



North American Indians.

## GEOGRAPHY OF NORTH AMERICA.

**Q.** What is America?

**A.** America is a continent lying between the Atlantic and the Pacific, divided into two parts called North and South America. It is sometimes styled the New World, because it has been settled from Europe within the last four centuries.

**Q.** For what is America remarkable?

**A.** America is remarkable for its vast plains, lofty mountains, immense rivers and lakes.

**Q.** How is North America divided?

**A.** In the north-east is Greenland, which, with Iceland, belong to Denmark: in the north-west lies Russian America, below these to the forty-ninth degree are the British Possessions: the centre extending from ocean to ocean and running south to

the gulfs of Mexico and California is occupied by the United States. Further south lie Mexico and several small republics known generally as Central America.

*Q.* Who were the original inhabitants of America?

*A.* The original inhabitants of America were a dark race whom we call Indians: in most parts they wandered about and subsisted by fishing and hunting. Some had villages, but all were unacquainted with the use of iron. Mexico and Peru were inhabited by more civilized races who had made considerable progress in arts, manufactures and architecture, but had been surpassed by another previous race who left remarkable ruins and monuments.

*Q.* What are the chief productions of America?

*A.* America had none of the common animals, trees or grains of Europe. The principal animals were the White Bear, Moose, Bison, Flying Squirrel, Beaver, Opossum, Skunk, the Mocking Bird, Turkey, Condor, the Anaconda, Alligator, Rattlesnake, etc.

*Q.* What were the principal plants?

*A.* The chief plants were cotton, maize or Indian corn, the potato, tobacco, etc.

*Q.* What metals abound in America?

*A.* America is rich in metals, and has immense quantities of iron, copper, lead, gold and silver, besides coal, used for fuel, diamonds and other precious stones.

1.  
betw  
tion  
count  
popul  
love o  
to ea  
Hecla  
2.  
being  
by In  
leave  
becam  
ing sp  
of mo  
3.  
kings  
and gr  
the R  
tempte  
headed  
republ  
ten yer  
early s

1. D  
whom w  
it then f

## ICELAND AND GREENLAND

1. Iceland is a large island lying in the Northern Atlantic, between Europe and America. Greenland is the nearest portion of the American continent: it is a bleak and desolate country, with a thin and scattered population. Iceland is more populous, and the people are noted for their simple lives and love of learning. The country is cold, often barren, and subject to earthquakes and eruptions from the great volcano Mount Hecla.

2. Iceland was first discovered by Irish missionaries, but being subsequently visited by the Swedes, was settled in 874 by Ingulph, a Norwegian baron, who had been compelled to leave his own country. Others followed him, and Iceland became a thriving colony. Christianity was introduced, learning spread, and the Icelandic was the first cultivated language of modern times.

3. The early government of Iceland was republican, but the kings of Denmark at last brought it under their subjection, and greatly checked its prosperity by oppressive laws. When the Reformation was introduced into Denmark the king attempted to enforce it in Iceland, but the people rebelled, and headed by a patriotic bishop, declared Iceland once more a republic. They maintained a gallant struggle for freedom for ten years, but were at last crushed, and the monasteries, those early seats of learning in the north, were all suppressed.

---

1. Describe Iceland? 2. By whom was it first discovered? By whom was it colonized? 3. What was its first government? What was it then? Who at last reduced it? What occurred at the Reformation?

4. Greenland was settled as Iceland had been. Eric, driven from Iceland in 982, sailed westward, discovered Greenland during the summer, and was so pleased that he led a colony there. Returning to Norway he became a Christian, and brought out missionaries to his colony. Greenland soon attained considerable prosperity, many villages grew up, with churches, convents and schools, and Gardar, the capital, was a Bishop's see. Under the oppressive rule of Denmark the colony sank, and was at last destroyed by famine, pestilence, and the incursions of the Esquimaux.

5. The family of Eric, who settled Greenland, were great explorers. Lief, his son, sailed down the coast of North America and discovered a place full of wild grapes, which he named Vinland. Here, in a subsequent voyage, his brother was killed. Newfoundland, the St. Lawrence, and the coast of New England were visited by other navigators, to explore or trade, and by missionaries to convert the natives. In the eleventh century, John, an Irish monk, was killed in Vinland, and Eric, a bishop, sailed from Greenland to carry the gospel to the people in the south.

6. The history of Iceland of late years presents no events of importance. In the last century the Moravians began missions in Greenland, and have succeeded to some extent in civilizing and converting the Esquimaux. The Danes have only a few posts scattered along the coast.

---

4. Give the history of Greenland. 5. What countries were explored by Eric's sons? 6. What is the later history of Iceland?

1. T  
and no  
far bel  
land ce  
he pre  
a sphere

2. V  
make l  
service  
and sol  
men ric  
despair,  
out thr  
from Pa  
one of t  
he calle  
discover

3. G  
while th  
deprived  
to Spain  
South A  
rentine,  
tion som

1. Wha  
you tell o  
voyage?



## DISCOVERY BY COLUMBUS.

1. The North-men knew only a small part of the continent, and none suspected that a separate continent stretched down far below the equator. Some time after the fate of the Greenland colony, a Polish priest named Copernicus began to teach the present system of Astronomy, and showed that the earth is a sphere, so that it could be traveled around.

2. When the discovery of the compass enabled mariners to make longer voyages, Christopher Columbus, a Genoese in the service of Spain, proposed to sail across the Atlantic to China, and solicited several princes to give him vessels to try it. Most men ridiculed the idea, and when he was about to give it up in despair, Isabella, queen of Castile, at her own expense, fitted him out three little vessels in 1492. With these Columbus sailed from Palos in Spain, and after a voyage of ten weeks landed on one of the Bahama islands. Believing that it was part of Asia, he called it the West Indies, and the people Indians. After discovering other islands he returned in triumph to Spain.

3. Great honors were at first given to Columbus, but after a while the Spanish government grew jealous. Columbus was deprived of his rank in St. Domingo, and sent back in chains to Spain. In other voyages he discovered the continent of South America. It received the name America from a Florentine, Amerigo, or Henry, Vespucci, who sailed in an expedition some years after.

---

1. What astronomer led to new ideas of navigation? 2. What can you tell of Columbus and his project? 3. What was the result of his voyage?

## SPANISH AMERICA.—THE WEST INDIES.

1. All the islands lying between North and South America are now called the West Indies, though that name was at first given to all America. Four of these islands Cuba, Hayti or St. Domingo, Jamaica and Porto Rico, are quite large. All are very fertile, and as the climate is warm the productions are valuable and abundant. Sugar, tobacco, coffee and cotton, are raised in great quantities.

2. Hayti was the first island which the Spaniards settled, and from it they spread to all the other islands. Columbus was a good man, but many who came over were cruel and avaricious; they oppressed the Indians, reduced them to slavery and by frequent wars depopulated the islands. The Spaniards then brought in negro slaves to cultivate the land and the islands became rich and populous.

3. As the power of Spain declined, other nations took most of these islands. England took Jamaica and several small islands, France a portion of St. Domingo with other islands, and about sixty years ago the negroes in Hayti revolted, drove out the French and Spaniards, and formed an independent state, which has been three times a republic, twice an empire and once a kingdom. It is in a wretched condition. Cuba and Porto Rico still belong to Spain, Jamaica and most of the small islands to England, a few to France, Denmark and Holland.

---

1. Describe the West Indies. 2. What was the conduct of the Spaniards in Hayti? 3. What is the subsequent history of these islands? Which now belong to Spain? What has Hayti become?

1. North  
Ocean  
the int  
mate.  
been a

2. M  
civilize  
of Egy  
and oth  
ries old  
built t  
human

3. M  
states;  
from th  
chiefs,  
founded  
much o  
beautif  
to vario  
regular  
of their  
were sa

4. In

1. Des  
race sub

## MEXICO.

1. Mexico is a fine country lying in the southern part of North America, between the Gulf of Mexico and the Pacific Ocean. The land on the sea coast is low and unhealthy, but the interior is an elevated plain, which enjoys a delightful climate. Mexico abounds in silver mines, which have always been a great source of wealth.

2. Mexico was inhabited at a very early period by a highly civilized race, and many ruins exist which compare with those of Egypt and Niniveh. They comprise cities, palaces, temples and other buildings, half buried in the earth, with trees centuries old growing over them. Of the history of the people who built them not a trace remains, showing us how vain are all human greatness and power.

3. Mexico was at one time divided into a number of small states; but in the twelfth century, a people called Aztecs came from the north in great poverty, but after a while, under valiant chiefs, rose to power, subdued the neighboring states, and founded the Empire of Mexico. The Aztecs now acquired much civilization from those they conquered: Mexico became beautiful, roads were constructed, a regular system of couriers to various parts of the empire formed, and all things assumed a regular form. Immense pyramids were raised for the services of their cruel religion, in which thousands of human victims were sacrificed.

4. In 1519, while Montezuma was emperor, the Spainards,

---

1. Describe Mexico. 2. Who were the original inhabitants? 3. What race subsequently attained the superiority? 4. What happened in the

under Ferdinand Cortez, landed at Vera Cruz and advanced to Mexico. They were well received by the emperor, but the fears of the people were excited, and Cortez finding himself in danger, seized the emperor. On this a revolt ensued, and Montezuma, in endeavoring to restore peace, was killed, and the Spaniards were driven out.

5. Guatimozin, the last emperor, used every effort to free Mexico from the invaders, but Cortes and his Spanish soldiers, with the help of Tlascala, a republic at war with Mexico, retook the city, and soon after put Guatimozin to death. Thus ended the empire of the Aztecs. The wealth of the country soon attracted emigrants from Europe, and the Spanish power was thoroughly established. The Indians were at first oppressed, but by the efforts of Zumarraga, Las Casas and other good bishops, just and strict laws were passed. Missionaries soon spread through the city and converted most of the settled tribes, though many missionary fathers lost their lives in various places. The Spaniards intermarried with these converts of their own rank, and to this day the mass of the people is of Indian origin.

6. Mexico remained a province of Spain, governed by viceroys, till the time of the French revolution, when it was in its most flourishing state. Its history till that time is not remarkable: it was the first formed of the North American states: here the first books were printed, colleges founded, and academies of art formed. While Spain was desolated by anarchy,

---

reign of Montezuma? Describe the conquest. 5. What efforts did Guatimozin make? What followed the conquest? How were the Indians treated? Who protected them? 6. What was its colonial history? When did the Mexicans revolt? Who finally achieved its inde-

great  
resolved  
made  
succeed  
Iturbid

7. M  
to the  
subsequ  
in imita  
ambitio  
it has  
success  
power,

8. I  
revolte  
in pers  
taken p  
that sta  
Texas,  
United  
never  
States  
advance  
while a  
its way  
Mexico

pendence  
formed?  
happene  
did Mexi

great troubles took place in Mexico, and the people at last resolved to form a distinct government. The first attempt made in 1810 by Hidalgo, a priest, was defeated: the next succeeded, and O'Donoho, the last viceroy, surrendered to Iturbide, the Mexican general, in 1821.

7. Mexico was now declared an empire, and Iturbide raised to the throne, but after a short reign he was expelled, and subsequently returning, was shot. A republican government, in imitation of that of the United States, was then formed, but ambitious men soon plunged the country into anarchy, in which it has ever since continued. Santa Anna has been the most successful of these men, and has frequently obtained the chief power, and has been as frequently expelled.

8. In 1836 Americans who had been invited into Texas revolted, and declared it an independent republic. Santa Anna in person led an army to reduce it, but was defeated and taken prisoner at the battle of San Jacinto, where Mexico lost that state for ever. Yucatan soon after revolted, and in 1846 Texas, which had been a separate republic, was annexed to the United States. The frontier between Mexico and Texas had never been settled, and a war ensued between the United States and Mexico, in which the Americans, under Taylor, advanced to Monterey, and seized New Mexico and California, while another army, under Scott, took Vera Cruz, and fought its way to Mexico. A treaty of peace was then made, by which Mexico relinquished California and New Mexico.

---

pendence? 7. What did it now become? What was, however, soon formed? Who has been the most conspicuous man since then? 8. What happened in 1836? What resulted from the annexation of Texas? What did Mexico lose by the war?

## BRITISH POSSESSIONS IN NORTH AMERICA.

## C A N A D A.

1. Canada is a part of the British Possessions in North America, lying chiefly on the northern shore of the St. Lawrence and the great lakes. It formerly belonged to France, and then included all the other British provinces.

2. Canada was originally inhabited by Indian tribes in a very barbarous condition. Almost all belonged to two races, the Algonquins, who lived by hunting and fishing, and roamed from place to place, and the Hurons, who were more advanced, lived in villages of bark cabins, protected by palisades, and raised Indian corn, beans, squashes and tobacco. These tribes were at peace with each other, and at war with the Iroquois, a tribe located in the present state of New York.

3. Newfoundland was discovered by French fishermen in the time of Columbus. Verazzani, Cartier, and other French navigators explored Canada and the neighboring coasts. After several fruitless attempts to settle the country, Port Royal, now Annapolis, in Nova Scotia was begun by De Monts in 1605, and Quebec in 1608, by Samuel Champlain. Of Acadia or Nova Scotia we shall speak hereafter, and we shall now tell of the history of Canada.

4. Champlain is styled the father of Canada. He was a good and brave man, laboring earnestly for the good of the

- 
1. Describe Canada. 2. By what tribes was it inhabited? With whom were they at war? 3. Describe the early French discoveries? 4. Where were the first two settlements formed? Who founded Quebec?

colony.  
Canada,  
brought  
convert  
Canada,  
ning to  
him and

5. Ca  
was ag  
ability t  
ment in  
Iroquois  
Hurons,  
and Up  
the colo  
made, h  
Iroquois  
proceede  
Lakes St  
great ha

6. Th  
mineral  
Mississip  
de la Sa  
Other m  
Hudson's  
whole va

Describe h  
restored?  
aries go?

colony. He gained the good will of all the Indian tribes in Canada, and joined them in their war against the Iroquois; he brought out colonists and missionaries to settle the country, to convert the Indians, and explored much of New York and Canada, as far as Lake Huron. Just as his colony was beginning to prosper it was attacked by the English, who carried him and most of the settlers to England, in 1629.

5. Canada was restored to France in 1632, and Champlain was again made governor, and conducted affairs with great ability to his death. The colony was neglected by the government in France, and suffered greatly in the war with the Iroquois, who had obtained arms of the Dutch. In 1649 the Hurons, now almost all converted, were nearly destroyed, and Upper Canada ravaged; the Algonquins fell next, and the colony was brought to the verge of ruin. Peace was made, however, in 1653, and missionaries went among the Iroquois to endeavor to convert them to Christianity: others proceeded to the Far West and preached to the Indians on Lakes Superior and Michigan. In these missions they suffered great hardships, and often lost their lives.

6. The missionaries explored the country, discovered its mineral and vegetable wealth, and at last discovered the Mississippi, which Father Marquette explored, and Robert de la Salle afterwards sailed down to the Gulf of Mexico. Other missionaries penetrated into Maine and north towards Hudson's Bay. By these discoveries France laid claim to the whole valleys of the Mississippi and St. Lawrence.

---

Describe his policy. By whom was Canada taken? 5. When was it restored? What was the result of the Indian war? Where did missionaries go? 6. What parts did they explore? 7. What did Dongan



7. When New York was taken by the English, in 1664, a new era began. Dongan, governor of New York, attempted to exclude the French from all south of the St. Lawrence, and soon after war breaking out, the English attempted to conquer Canada. The Iroquois, their allies, attacked the town of Lachine by night, massacred the people, and put all to fire and sword. The French and their Indians began a similar war, and burnt Schenectady, Haverhill, Salmon Falls, and other villages. An expedition, under Phipps, was sent by sea against Quebec, and one by land from New York, in 1690, but the land army was overtaken by sickness, and Frontenac, the brave governor of Canada, repulsed Phipps before Quebec.

8. This was the period of martial renown in Canada. Iberville and his brothers signalized themselves in several expeditions against the Iroquois in New York, and in battles with the English in Nova Scotia and Hudson's Bay, and led colonies to settle Louisiana, thus securing the territory claimed by France. War was renewed from time to time, but the French gradually extended their sway, and a final contest approached. It began in 1754, and the English Colonies, with aid from England, prepared to conquer Canada; but the French were brave, well commanded, and active. They defeated Braddock on the Ohio, Monroe on Lake Champlain, and took Oswego; but they were unsupported by the French king, and after losing Kingston, abandoned Pittsburg and Niagara. An English expedition ascended the St. Lawrence, and gained the heights before Quebec; a battle

---

attempt? What did the English Indians do? How did the French retaliate? What was the result of the English attempt on Quebec? 8. Describe the exploits of Iberville? What was the final result of the war? Where were the French at first victorious? Where were they

ensued,  
rals, w  
soon af

9. O  
which t  
allowed  
the old  
the cau  
hered t  
1812, a  
dians t  
restored  
tion to

1. I  
North  
New Br  
Acadia,  
a wood  
coal; N

2. Th  
the St.  
He was  
wantonly

at last de  
cans inva

1. Wha  
ments ma  
settlement

ensued, in which Montcalm and Wolfe, the two opposing generals, were killed, but the French were defeated, and Canada soon after fell into the hands of the English.

9. Canada obtained favorable terms from the conquerors, which the English government faithfully kept; the people were allowed to enjoy their own laws and religion. In consequence the old English Colonies were dissatisfied, and this was one of the causes of the American Revolution, in which Canada adhered to England. The Americans then, and in the war of 1812, attempted to conquer it, but failed. In 1838, the Canadians themselves revolted, but, after a short time, peace was restored, and Canada has ever since remained in quiet subjection to the British crown.

---

#### NOVA SCOTIA, NEW BRUNSWICK, &c.

1. Besides Canada, England possesses other colonies in North America, each with a separate government; these are, New Brunswick, adjoining Maine; Nova Scotia, formerly called Acadia, and the Island of Newfoundland. New Brunswick is a wooded country; Nova Scotia is fertile, and abounds in coal; Newfoundland is bleak and desolate.

2. The first settlement in these parts was at the mouth of the St. Croix, transferred to Port Royal by Demonts, in 1605. He was succeeded by Portrin-court, under whom the colony was wantonly broken up, in 1613, by the English, who also des-

---

at last defeated? 9. How was Canada treated? When did the Americans invade it? When did an insurrection occur?

1. What other colonies has England? 2. Where were the first settlements made? When did the English take Port Royal? What other settlement did they destroy? To whom did King James grant the

troyed a Jesuit missionary settlement in Maine. Soon after, James I. of England, granted Acadia to Sir William Alexander, under the name of Nova Scotia, and the French settlements were again broken up. The country was restored, in 1634, and divided between three proprietors, and a civil war ensued between two of these, de la Tour and Charnisé, which greatly retarded the colony, and enfeebled it so, that it was again conquered by England, in 1654. It was restored in 1667, and for a time remained a French colony; but after repelling an invasion from Massachusetts, in 1704, was finally conquered by Nicholson in 1710.

3. During these changes, the poor colonists had suffered greatly, but with the peace affairs began to prosper. In the next war, the French, who still held Cape Breton, attempted to conquer Nova Scotia, but in 1745, Louisburg, with the whole island was taken, and the French power destroyed. The English now began to colonize the country; but jealous of the French, at last, in 1755, with a large force, seized all the French settlers, to the number of several thousand, and carried them off to various points, from Maryland to Georgia, where they were landed penniless, and no remonstrance or petition ever obtained one farthing for the property of which they had been deprived. After the American Revolution Acadia was divided into two governments, Nova Scotia and New Brunswick, and remains so still.

4. Newfoundland was discovered by Cabot, in 1407. The

---

country? When was it restored? What ensued? When was the country finally conquered by England? 3. When was Louisburg taken? What infamous act was committed in 1755? What division was made after the American Revolution? 4. Who discovered Newfoundland? Who began a settlement? Who also colonized it?

valuable  
early  
lish be  
began  
and at  
nally

1. The  
world.  
bounded  
south b

1. Des

valuable fisheries off the coast soon attracted vessels, and as early as 1517 forty vessels were seen at once there. The English began a settlement in 1610, and in 1621 Lord Baltimore began a Catholic colony. The French also formed settlements, and at various times attempted to reduce the island, but it was finally left in the hands of England.



Gen. George Washington.



Martha Washington

### THE UNITED STATES.

1. The United States is one of the largest countries in the world. It extends from the Atlantic to the Pacific, and is bounded on the north by the British Possessions, and on the south by the gulf and republic of Mexico. It is watered by

- 
1. Describe the United States. 2. When and by whom were they

the great river Mississippi, which runs through the middle of its territory, and by other rivers flowing into the two oceans. It has every variety of soil and climate, and in its mineral and agricultural products exceeds most others.

2. The United States were not all settled at the same time, nor by the same nation. In its present state it is composed of colonies formerly belonging to Spain, France, England, Sweden, Holland, and a portion of the republic of Mexico. All the territory on the Atlantic once belonged to England, and we shall show the history of the separate colonies till the time when all were united under the British rule.

#### FLORIDA.

3. Florida was the portion first settled. The Spaniards, under Narvaez and de Soto, attempted to conquer it, but failed. Some French Protestants began a settlement there in 1564, under John Ribaut, but it was destroyed with great cruelty by Pedro Melendez, who led out a Spanish colony in the following year. Melendez, so cruel on that occasion, was a naval commander, a man of great energy and activity. He founded St. Augustine, and established forts along the coast, from Florida keys to the Chesapeake. He was, however, recalled to Spain; in his absence the French attacked one of his forts, and revenged their countrymen. After his death the colony sank, and was much enfeebled by the ravages committed by the English pirate Francis Drake. The most interesting part of its

---

settled? To whom did all the territory on the Atlantic once belong?  
3. Who began the first settlement in Florida? Who destroyed it?  
What did Melendez found? What happened soon after? What was a  
great blow to the colony? What is the most interesting part of its

history  
were by

4. Th  
under C  
till 1607  
It exper  
abilities  
became  
The col  
and Sm  
death by  
hontas,  
saved hi  
often ren

5. In  
formed a  
cut off n  
in which  
years aft  
civil war  
settlers  
was burn

6. In

history?  
founder?  
What civi

history is the conversion of the Indian tribes, most of whom were brought to the light of the Gospel and civilization.

## VIRGINIA.

4. The English who had explored all the northern coast, under Cabot, made many attempts to settle, which all failed, till 1607, when a permanent colony was founded at Jamestown. It experienced much difficulty at first, but owing chiefly to the abilities of Captain John Smith, one of the founders, soon became firmly established. Smith's life was full of adventures. The colonists soon became involved in wars with the Indians, and Smith was once taken prisoner, and about to be put to death by Powhattan, the great Indian king or chief, but Pocahontas, the daughter of Powhattan, interceded for him, and saved his life. She was always a friend to the English, and often rendered them signal services.

5. In 1622, Opechancanough, the successor of Powhattan, formed a conspiracy to massacre the whites, and in one day cut off nearly one fourth of the colonists. A bloody war ensued, in which the Indians were almost entirely destroyed. Some years after, a war began with the Susquehannas, which led to a civil war between the Governor Berkeley and a part of the settlers headed by Nathaniel Bacon. Jamestown, the capital, was burnt, but on Bacon's death, in 1676, order was restored.

## NEW YORK.

6. In 1614, the Dutch, who had, under Hudson, discovered

---

history? 4. Where was the first English settlement? Who was the founder? Describe his narrow escape? 5. What was formed in 1622? What civil war occurred and what led to it? 6. Who first settled New

the North River, settled at New York, which they called New Amsterdam, and began the colony of New Netherland. Being a commercial people, they traded in peace with the natives for several years, and had trading posts and settlements near the Mohawk, on the Connecticut, and on Long Island, as well as at New York. They very soon began to export grain to other colonies, and even formed a trading treaty with the French in Canada. They claimed all the country from the Connecticut to the Delaware.

7. In 1627, the Swedes, however, settled on the Delaware, and in 1633 the English on the Connecticut; these soon began to give trouble to the Dutch, and in 1641 a war broke out with the Indians, in which the colony suffered greatly, but most of the smaller tribes were nearly destroyed. The Dutch next resolved to attack the Swedes, and at last Governor Stuyvesant reduced them to submission, in 1664. The English now began to covet the part possessed by the Dutch, and in the same year Charles II., reviving an old claim, granted it to his brother James, duke of York, who sent out an expedition which took possession, and called it New York; the southern part was granted to others, under the name of New Jersey, and English settlers flocked into both. The Dutch recovered it again in 1673, but surrendered it the following year.

#### NEW ENGLAND.

8. After the Reformation in England, many disliked the religion introduced by Somerset, and drawing off, took the

---

York? Describe the Dutch colony. 7. Who settled on the Delaware? Who on the Connecticut? What war occurred in 1641? Who reduced the Swedes? Who granted New Netherlands to the duke of York?

name of  
were pur  
Not lik  
America  
another  
England  
Massach

9. Th  
much, b  
of republ  
and chur  
ence of  
to separ  
founded  
New Ha  
fanatical  
the colon  
disciple  
settleme  
her discipl

10. T  
was inhab  
Pekanok  
Island, th  
tions with  
quods, un

8. Who w  
were the P  
ter of thes  
these? 10



name of Separatists. Under Elizabeth, acts of conformity were passed against them, and many emigrated to Holland. Not liking the people, a number subsequently sailed to America, and settled at Plymouth, in 1620. Eight years after, another party, called Puritans, who had also left the Church of England, came out direct, and began at Salem the colony of Massachusetts Bay.

9. These colonists were industrious, earnest men, who suffered much, but gradually prospered. Their government was a kind of republic, the chief power being in the hands of the clergy, and church-membership a qualification for citizenship. Difference of opinion and the arrival of new leaders from England led to separate and distant settlements. Winthrop and Hooker founded the colony of Hartford, Eaton and Davenport that of New Haven. Williams exiled by a judicial sentence for his fanatical ideas and opposition to the Church system, founded the colony of Providence, and a few years after, Coddington, a disciple of Mrs. Hutchinson after her banishment, began a settlement on Rhode Island, and Mr. Wheelwright, another of her disciples, founded New Hampshire.

10. The territory now occupied by the New Englanders, was inhabited by various Indian tribes, the Massachusetts and Pokanokets in Massachusetts, the Narragansetts in Rhode Island, the Pequods and Mohegans in Connecticut. Their relations with these had been at first friendly, but in 1636 the Pequods, under Sassacus, began to cut off the settlers; war was

---

8. Who were the Separatists? What colony did they found? Who were the Puritans? Where did they settle? 9. What was the character of these colonies? What led to new colonies? Which colonies were these? 10. What Indians occupied New England? Which tribe began

declared, and in the following year Captain Mason took their fort at Mystic, and there and in a subsequent battle, killed over a thousand, the rest were sold as slaves, and the Pequods annihilated.

11. The settlers were chiefly men of education, and schools were established from the very first; in 1638 Harvard college, the oldest in the United States, was founded. In 1643 the four colonies of Massachusetts, Plymouth, Hartford, and New Haven, formed a union, under the name of the "United Colonies of New England" for mutual defence and protection. No danger required their efforts for some time. The Indians remained quiet, and Elliott and other zealous men attempted to convert and civilize them, but in 1675 Philip, chief of the Pokanokets, attacked the settlements, and was soon joined by the Narragansetts and Springfield Indians. Great ravages were now committed, but after great loss on both sides, the two tribes were finally destroyed.

#### MARYLAND.

12. From the time of Henry VIII., except in Mary's short reign, the English Catholics had been cruelly persecuted; they were deprived of their churches, colleges and convents, forced to go to the Established Church, compelled to pay heavy fines, and often put to death, especially the clergy. In 1632 Lord Baltimore, who had become a Catholic, resolved to found a colony where Catholics might enjoy repose. He obtained a

---

war? Where were they defeated? 11. What college was founded in 1638? What took place in 1643? What Indian war broke out in 1675? 12. What was the condition of the English Catholics? Who obtained a part of Maryland? What town was founded? How did they treat the

grant of  
he grant  
at St. M  
with the  
ize them  
ants can  
abolished  
of citize  
civil war  
which St

13. In  
attempt  
shire was  
by the  
others w  
governed  
sopher J  
brated W  
cluding p  
establishe  
granted  
charter w  
sentative

Indians?  
of Cromwe  
II? To w  
whom was  
was Virgin

grant of Maryland, and sent out a number of settlers to whom he granted most favorable conditions. A settlement was formed at St. Mary's, free toleration granted to all, peace was made with the Indians, and missions established to convert and civilize them. Induced by the freedom enjoyed there, many Protestants came to the colony, but as soon as they were able, they abolished the toleration, and excluded Catholics from all rights of citizenship, and sent off the missionaries as prisoners. A civil war raged in Maryland during the rule of Cromwell, in which St. Mary's was burnt, and great losses sustained.

#### COLONIES GENERALLY.

13. In the reign of Charles II. the government began to attempt to remodel all the colonial governments. New Hampshire was made a royal province, and a governor was appointed by the king. Carolina was granted to Lord Clarendon and others who formed a settlement in 1666, which was at first governed by a constitution drawn up by the English philosopher John Locke. Pennsylvania was granted to the celebrated William Penn, who came to America in 1682, and concluding peace with the Indians, founded a colony for which he established a wise and liberal government. Virginia was granted to Lord Culpepper, but soon returned. A liberal charter was granted by the king to Connecticut, and a representative assembly established by the duke of York in his

---

Indians? What happened soon after? What occurred during the time of Cromwell? 13. What attempts were made in the reign of Charles II? To whom was Carolina granted? Describe its settlement. To whom was Pennsylvania granted? Describe its settlement. To whom was Virginia granted? What was granted to Connecticut? What was

colony of New York, where the first assembly passed a charter of liberties granting free toleration. Massachusetts, on the ground of its violating the terms, was deprived of its charter, and a royal governor appointed.

14. Such was the state of the colonies when James II. came to the throne in 1685. He instituted proceedings against Connecticut and Rhode Island, and removing Dongan, the able governor of New York, appointed Sir Edmund Andross governor of New England and New York. When the revolution broke out in England, Andross was arrested at Boston, Nicholson, the lieutenant-governor, driven from New York, where Jacob Leisler, a fanatical leader, seized the government, and plunged the colony into civil war, leaving it exposed to Indian invasion. The other colonies submitted quietly to the new order of things.

15. The accession of William III. led to a war with France, and for the first time Canada was arrayed against the English colonies. The Indians in her service ravaged the English frontier. Maine was then inhabited by the Abnakis converts of the French missionaries who had their own wrongs to avenge; they began by taking Dover and Pemaquid, Salmon Falls and Casco, while the Canada Indians, who had been persecuted by the Pagans in New York, attacked Schenectady. New England and New York prepared to retaliate; Nova Scotia was taken by Phipps, who was then sent around to attack Quebec, while an army from New York marched north to aid him, but the army was wasted by disease and Phipps was repulsed.

---

granted to New York? What colony was deprived of its charter?  
 14. What occurred in New York in 1689? 15. To what did William's accession lead? Describe the war. What was done by Phipps?

16. I  
 prived  
 refused  
 with Ply  
 so that  
 James, I  
 witness  
 in which

17. U  
 successio  
 and Spa  
 The Can  
 trality, a  
 sachuset  
 found an  
 New En  
 the south  
 Augustin  
 approach  
 deem his  
 a number  
 and sold  
 quence of  
 Charlesto

18. In  
 but in 1

16. What v  
 of Massach  
 curred in  
 What took

16. In 1691 Lord Baltimore and William Penn were deprived of their rights as proprietors, and William not only refused to restore Massachusetts her charter, but united it with Plymouth, Maine and Nova Scotia into one government, so that the American colonies, who had been so eager to reject James, lost instead of gaining by the change. The next year witnessed the beginning of the witch mania in New England, in which many were put to death.

17. Under the reign of Queen Anne the war of the Spanish succession began, which involved England in war with France and Spain, and America was again the scene of hostilities. The Canada Indians and those of New York agreed to neutrality, although Bellamont, governor of New York and Massachusetts, passed acts to imprison every Catholic missionary found among the Indians. Their whole force was turned on New England and the frontiers were fearfully ravaged. In the south Governor Moore, of Carolina, in 1702 attacked St. Augustine by land and water, but being alarmed by the approach of a Spanish fleet retired in confusion, and then, to redeem his credit, marched into what is now Georgia, destroyed a number of towns of the Apalaches, killed their missionaries, and sold great numbers of their converts as slaves. In consequence of this, the French and Spaniards, in 1706, attacked Charleston.

18. In 1707 Massachusetts attacked Port Royal, but failed; but in 1710 Nova Scotia was finally reduced. During the

---

16. What was William's conduct to Baltimore, Penn, and the colony of Massachusetts? How does he compare with James? 17. What occurred in the reign of Queen Anne? What took place in the north? What took place in the south? 18. What operations took place after

following year New England and New York again combined to attack Canada, but the fleet was lost in the St. Lawrence, and the land army returned to New York: and when at last peace was restored in 1713, the position of the two colonies had scarcely changed.

19. Just before the close of this war the Indians in North Carolina grew jealous, and resolved to cut off the whites; the Tuscaroras began the work of blood in 1711, but the whites soon defeated them in several engagements, took their forts, and drove them out of the colony, on which many removed to New York. This war was scarcely over when the Indians of South Carolina, headed by the Yamassees, made a similar attempt, but were defeated by Governor Craven, and driven into Florida.

20. For some years the colonies enjoyed great peace: in 1720 Carolina became a royal province, and some years after was finally separated into two distinct colonies, and three years after, a part of the territory, claimed also by Spain, was granted to General Oglethorpe, who founded the colony of Georgia, as a refuge for poor debtors. He was an energetic man, and by his offers drew many emigrants to the colony. A war with Spain was evidently approaching, and he built forts to defend his new state, and in 1739 invaded Florida, and laid siege to St. Augustine. At the same time he wrote letters to the governors of other colonies, warning them against Spanish

---

this in the north? How did the two powers remain at the peace of Utrecht? 19. What occurred in North Carolina during and after the war? 20. When did Carolina become a royal province? Give the early history of Georgia. What operations took place in 1706? In what war was it soon involved? What evil was done by a silly letter

priests  
in an e  
negro p  
most un  
attacked  
thorpe.

21. I  
land tro  
of Louis  
la Chap  
years, he  
the Ohio  
proposed

22. I  
Braddoc  
though  
they hel  
Fort Wi  
but then  
gara and  
Quebec,  
the Fren  
general,  
and an a  
of Canad

---

of Ogleth  
did war br  
hostilities  
the British

priests in disguise. When one reached New York the city was in an excitement, caused by several fires and the belief of a negro plot; a schoolmaster was arrested as a priest, tried, most unjustly convicted, and hung. Soon after, the Spaniards attacked Georgia, but were repulsed by a stratagem of Oglethorpe.

21. In 1744 a war broke out with France, and New England troops, under Colonel Pepperel, took the strong fortress of Louisburg, the Gibraltar of America, but the peace of Aix la Chapelle put an end to the war in 1748. In less than two years, however, the English and French came into collision on the Ohio. War ensued. A general union of the colonies was proposed, and a large force sent over under General Braddock.

22. In this war the English arms were at first defeated. Braddock and his army were cut to pieces on the Ohio, and though the French, under Direskau, were repulsed with loss, yet they held all their posts. After this they took Oswego and Fort William Henry, and defeated Abercrombie at Ticonderoga, but then their success ceased. Their forts at Pittsburg, Niagara and Kingston were taken. Wolfe led an army against Quebec, and having, by a stratagem, gained the heights, gave the French battle; and though he and Montcalm, the French general, were killed, the English were victorious, took Quebec, and an army from New York soon after completed the conquest of Canada.

---

of Oglethorpe's? How did his contest with Florida end? 21. When did war break out with France? What fortress was taken? Where did hostilities begin after the peace of 1748? 22. What was the fortune of the British arms in the war? What forts did the French finally lose?



## LOUISIANA.

23. After La Salle had explored the Mississippi he erected a fort in Illinois and Tonty, another in Arkansas. The death of La Salle in Texas, where he had been unfortunately driven, checked colonization, but in 1699 the Canadian, Iberville, entered the river Mississippi, and began a settlement at Mobile. New Orleans was afterwards founded, and posts formed at Natchez and Yazoo.

24. This new colony was called Louisiana: and the great speculator, John Law, formed, in 1716, a gigantic plan for its settlement, which ruined all who embarked in it, and greatly retarded the progress of Louisiana. The early history of the colony is extremely interesting: in 1718 it was involved in a war between France and Spain, and several engagements took place, in which Pensacola was taken and retaken. In 1722 the Indians, hitherto friendly, began hostilities, but were soon appeased; in 1729, however, the Natchez, roused by the tyrannical conduct of a French officer, massacred all the French at their post. A general war ensued, the Natchez were destroyed, but the French, in an expedition against the Chickasaws, were totally defeated. In the war with England this colony took no part.

---

Where was their power completely overthrown? 23. Where were forts erected by La Salle and Tonty? Who entered the Mississippi and founded Mobile? What other settlements were begun? 24. Who formed a plan for colonizing Louisiana? In what war was it involved? When did Indian wars begin? What part did it take in the war with

25. I  
not only  
except  
Spain a  
doned a  
nent wa  
were se  
Englan  
which t

26. I  
the Fre  
Spanish  
the first  
sion, an  
entered  
leaders,  
On this  
rule enj

27. I  
obtained  
and laws  
colonies,

---

England?  
Spain? V  
territory?  
state of f  
attempt?  
What caus

## THE VARIOUS COLONIES.

25. By the treaty of Paris, in 1763, France ceded to England not only Canada, but all her territory west of the Mississippi, except the island of New Orleans, and at the same time ceded to Spain all her territory west of that river, and completely abandoned all her possessions in North America. The whole continent was then owned by England and Spain, whose territories were separated by the Mississippi river: for Spain ceded to England her province of Florida, in exchange for Havana, which the English had taken in the war.

26. In both these colonies great dissatisfaction now prevailed: the French of Louisiana were not disposed to bow to the Spanish yoke. A plan for adopting a republic was formed, and the first Spanish governor never ventured to show his commission, and was at last driven out: but his successor, O'Reilly, entered with a large military force, and arresting the republican leaders, condemned several to death, and sent others to Cuba. On this the whole colony submitted, and under the Spanish rule enjoyed great prosperity.

27. In the English possessions the French in Canada had obtained several privileges, the enjoyment of their own religion and laws; this excited great discontent in the former English colonies, who had always desired the conquest of Canada to

---

England? 25. What did France cede to England in 1763? What to Spain? What was now the boundary between the English and Spanish territory? How came England to obtain Florida? 26. What was the state of feeling in these colonies? What did the French of Louisiana attempt? Who subdued them? 27. What had Canada obtained? What causes of dissatisfaction prevailed in the other English colonies?

abolish both. When, besides this, parliament attempted to tax them, to meet the heavy debt incurred by the war, the colonies who had already borne their part protested, and an Indian conspiracy, headed by Pontiac, laid the whole western frontier in ruin, requiring new outlays by the colonial governments.

28. Parliament, however, persisted, and in 1765 passed the stamp act, laying a duty on all paper used in public documents. Great troubles ensued, but the next year parliament repealed the obnoxious act. The principle was not, however, abandoned, for in 1767 a duty was laid on tea and some other articles. This renewed the excitement; Boston was garrisoned, a riot took place there, and blood was shed. The cargoes of tea that arrived were thrown overboard, and a determined spirit of hostility was evinced.

29. The colonial governments were now generally suspended, and a congress composed of delegates from the various colonies, met at Philadelphia, and drew up a bill of rights and a petition to the king. In each colony provincial congresses were formed, to supply the place of their late assemblies, and arms began to be collected. General Gage, the British commander at Boston, attempted to seize some of these magazines, and in April, 1775, sent a body of troops to Concord. These were opposed at Lexington, by some militia, whom they defeated, and proceeded to Concord, but on their way back to Boston lost nearly one third of their force.

---

28. How did parliament act? What ensued? What act passed in 1767? What did the people of Boston do with the tea? 29. What were now suspended? What met at Philadelphia? What were formed in the colonies? What led to the first battle? 30. What was the effect of

30. T  
country  
lay, wa  
determin  
kept ad  
Hill. T  
bloody b  
America  
closed.  
Ticonder  
Champla  
31. C

the news  
Gage succ  
by the An  
appointed



Washington's Head Quarters, Newburgh.

## THE REVOLUTION.

30. The news of the fight at Lexington spread through the country, all rose in arms, and Boston, where the British army lay, was soon surrounded by troops. General Gage at last determined to open his way into the country, but the Americans kept advancing their posts, and in June occupied Bunker's Hill. The English resolved to drive them back; and after a bloody battle, in which the English lost a thousand men, the Americans fell back, but still kept every avenue to the interior closed. Almost at the same time a small detachment seized Ticonderoga and Crown Point, two important posts on Lake Champlain.

31. Congress now resolved to act energetically: it organized

---

the news of the battle? What battle took place near Boston? Did Gage succeed in breaking the American line? What forts were taken by the Americans? 31. What step did Congress now take? Who was appointed commander-in-chief? What expedition was planned? Do

an army, and appointed George Washington Commander-in-Chief, and he at once proceeded to Boston. The reduction of Canada, always a main idea with the colonists, first engaged attention: an expedition from New York and one from New England were to coöperate: they met before Quebec, and though enfeebled by disease and want, resolved to attack it,

but Montgomery, the Commander, was killed, Dec. 31, 1775.

and Arnold, the second in command, wounded. The expedition totally failed, and Canada never took any part in the subsequent acts of the Americans.

32. Washington meanwhile continued the blockade of Boston, and at last pushed his lines so near that Gage had either to fight or leave Boston, and accordingly sailed away. A British fleet then attacked Charleston, in South Carolina, and thus united all parts of the country in the common cause. After entering Boston Washington withdrew, and with his army occupied New York, a key-position in the country.

33. Congress now despairing of any real concessions on the part of the English government, resolved to take a step not at first premeditated, and on the 4th of July, 1776, passed a Declaration of Independence, and the several states assumed the powers of independent governments, united by articles of confederation. The English force, foiled at Charleston, sailed for New York, and there met large reinforcements from England. Washington, to defend the city, met them on Long Island, but his best division was hemmed in and cut to pieces, and drawing in all his troops, he retreated from New York,

---

scribe the Canada campaign. 32. How did the blockade of Boston end? Where did the British then go? What city did Washington occupy? 33. What step did Congress now take? On what city did the English now move? Where was a battle fought? Describe Washing-

closely  
engaged  
into Per

34. T  
posting  
Washing  
Christm  
force at  
but Was  
in the r  
Encoura  
held by  
able gen

35. R  
title of U  
sent to  
General  
and seve  
them the

36. A  
the Eng  
York: b  
Schuyler.  
same tim  
General  
to coöper

ton's retre  
Describe t  
adopted by  
came to th  
Who was s

closely pursued by General Howe; and avoiding a general engagement, crossed the Hudson, and traversed New Jersey, into Pennsylvania.

34. The English commander then gave up the pursuit, and posting troops at various points, returned to New York. Washington seized the moment, recrossed the Delaware on Christmas day, and surprised the whole British and Hessian force at Trenton. Lord Cornwallis was sent to check him, but Washington passed his main body, attacked a detachment in the rear, defeated it, and surprised the post of Princeton. Encouraged by this success, he soon recovered all the posts held by the English in Jersey, and established his fame as an able general.

35. Regular articles of confederation were now adopted, the title of United States of America was assumed, ambassadors sent to France, and almost unlimited powers conferred on General Washington. In France great enthusiasm was excited, and several persons of distinction at once came over; among them the Marquis de la Fayette, Baron De Kalb, and others.

36. At this period of the war Canada was in the hands of the English, who were also in possession of the city of New York: between these lay an American army under General Schuyler. The English determined to destroy this, and at the same time bring Washington to action, and take Philadelphia. General Burgoyne was sent to Canada, and entered New York to coöperate with the Six Nations, who had joined the English

---

ton's retreat? 34. What advantage did Washington gain in December? Describe the subsequent campaign in Jersey? 35. What were now adopted by the States? To what country were ambassadors sent? Who came to the United States? 36. What did the English now attempt? Who was sent from Canada? How did Schuyler act? What was the

side. As he advanced, Schuyler cautiously fell back, in order to draw Burgoyne to a favorable ground, and had made all preparations for the decisive struggle at Saratoga, when he was superseded by General Gates. Burgoyne was now in the heart of a hostile country: two detachments, sent to secure stores, had been defeated at Bennington, the Americans lay in force before him. In a series of engagements he attempted to break through their line, till, baffled at every point, he began to retreat, but failing in this, surrendered October 17, 1777. By this capitulation six thousand men, with arms of every kind, fell into the hands of the Americans.

37. General Howe had sailed in July for Chesapeake Bay, and in August advanced on Philadelphia. Washington met him at the Brandywine, but was defeated and fell back to Philadelphia, which the English soon occupied, stationing their main body at Germantown. Here Washington endeavored to surprise them, but failed, being repulsed with considerable loss. Attempts to cut off English communication by sea also failed, and the American army was in a state of great suffering.

38. France now made a treaty with the United States, and prepared for war with England, and sent a fleet to America. On this, Clinton abandoned Philadelphia and fell back on New York, after being severely handled by Washington at Monmouth. After this the war in the north and south assumed a

---

result of the campaign? 37. How did Howe proceed against Philadelphia? Where did Washington give him battle? With what success? What attempt did Washington make to recover the city? What was the state of the American army? 38. What country now made a treaty with the United States? What effect had this on the English? Where did Washington give them a severe handling? What character did the war assume? What happened to Gates and his army in the south?

predator  
petrated  
gained  
General  
engaged  
of 2000  
Kalb.

39. T  
but Mar  
ries, soo  
took the  
in sever  
ginia, w  
able to c

40. A  
Washing  
Clinton,  
York, or  
self in r  
New Yor  
Virginia,  
Chesapen  
attempt t  
American  
19th of  
the next  
acknowled

39. Who m  
checked th  
perplexed t  
turn? Des



predatory character, and great cruelties and outrages were perpetrated by the Indians and Tories. In the south the English gained great advantages, and took Savannah and Charleston. General Gates was accordingly sent down, but having rashly engaged the enemy at Camden, he was defeated with the loss of 2000 men, among them the gallant and excellent general De Kalb.

39. The defeat at Camden left the American cause in gloom, but Marion, Sumter, and other partizan officers, by petty victories, soon greatly weakened the British power, and when Greene took the command of the southern army, he checked Cornwallis in several battles, and at last compelled him to retire into Virginia, where he took up a position near enough to the sea to be able to escape.

40. A French army, under Rochambeau, now arrived, and Washington with him concerted a plan of action. Sir Henry Clinton, unable to tell whether they would attack him in New York, or Cornwallis in Virginia, ordered the latter to hold himself in readiness. Washington finally induced him to believe New York the point of attack, but marched suddenly down to Virginia, and reached it the very day the French entered the Chesapeake. Cornwallis was surrounded, and after a vain attempt to escape, finding that his outposts were carried by the American troops and defence impossible, surrendered on the 19th of October, 1781. This ended the war, peace was made the next year, and by the treaty of Paris, in 1783, England acknowledged the independence of the United States.

---

39. Who maintained the American cause in the south? Who finally checked the English and drove them into Virginia? 40. What now perplexed the English? On which army did the French and Americans turn? Describe the campaign. When did Cornwallis surrender?

41. By this treaty England retained Canada, Nova Scotia, Newfoundland, and all her possessions in the north. Florida was ceded back to Spain, and all the rest of her colonies, became a new republic, called the United States of America, consisting of thirteen distinct states, New Hampshire, Massachusetts, Connecticut, Rhode Island, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, Virginia, North and South Carolina, and Georgia. These states were connected by articles of confederation, but a new government was formed, and a constitution adopted which left each state its own sovereign rights, but vested in a president and congress certain specific powers for the general good.

42. Washington was elected the first president, and under him this new government was put into operation with great success. Emigration from Europe facilitated the settlement of the parts beyond the Alleghany, and during his administration Vermont, Kentucky, and Tennessee were admitted into the Union, and in the administration of Thomas Jefferson, who took his seat in 1801, Ohio was admitted, and Louisiana, which had been ceded back to France, was purchased, and thus gave the republic the whole country west to the Pacific. During his time, too, America, whose vessels had been plundered by Barbary cruizers, won the respect of Europe by her chastisement of those piratical nations.

43. During the administration of James Madison, which

---

When was peace made? 41. What did England retain? What did she restore to Spain? What did the rest become? Name the States. What was the government soon formed? 42. Who was first president? What happened in his administration? What occurred under Jefferson? 43. What occurred under Madison? Who began an Indian war? Where was the war at first carried on? Where were naval battles fought?

began  
at the  
the En  
exterm  
the Car  
Americ  
and inc  
position  
favorab  
lakes.

44. I  
the Che  
selves b  
Baltimor  
General  
the Eng  
signed w  
the India

45. Du  
as a state  
of Spain  
lowed so  
4th of Ma  
period, f  
wished t  
threats o  
A war so  
long a so

44. Where  
did they pe  
45. What

began in 1809, the troubles with England resulted in war, and at the same time the Indians in the north-west, instigated by the English, and led by the famous Tecumseh, began a war of extermination. In this war the engagements were chiefly on the Canada frontier, Detroit was taken by the English, but the Americans in turn entered Canada, yet after several bloody and inefficient battles, both parties remained in their original position. Several naval engagements took place, in most cases favorable to the Americans, both on the Atlantic and the lakes.

44. Besides these attacks in the north, the English entered the Chesapeake, and advancing to Washington, disgraced themselves by burning the public buildings, but were repulsed at Baltimore. Another force landed near New Orleans, but General Jackson had taken post before the city, and defeated the English with terrible loss. Before this, peace had been signed with England, and as Tecumseh had fallen in Canada, the Indians submitted.

45. During Madison's administration, Louisiana was admitted as a state; under his successor Monroe, Florida was purchased of Spain, and Indiana and Mississippi admitted as states, followed soon after by Alabama, Maine, and Missouri. On the 4th of March, 1829, Andrew Jackson became president. In his period, for the first time, South Carolina, one of the states, wished to renounce the federal compact, but Jackson, by threats of force, compelled submission to the laws of Congress. A war soon after began with the Seminole Indians, which was long a source of trouble.

---

44. Where did the English land on the Atlantic? What disgraceful act did they perpetrate? Where were they completely defeated by Jackson?

45. What states were admitted under Madison and Monroe? What

46. The ensuing administrations were marked by no important events. In 1845, John Tyler being president, an act was passed to annex the republic of Texas; and as James K. Polk soon after ascended the presidential chair, it devolved on him to settle the questions which arose between the United States and Mexico. Hostilities began, and war ensued. The Americans acted with great vigor. General Taylor advanced through Texas to Monterey, which he stormed, General Kearney took Santa Fé and New Mexico, Colonel Fremont and Commodore Stockton took California. The Mexicans marched with a superior force on Taylor, who fell back to Buena Vista, but there gained a signal victory over Santa Anna.

47. Another American army, under General Scott, now appeared before Vera Cruz, took it, and advanced on the capital. Santa Anna met them at Cerro Gordo, but defeated there, fell back to some strong posts, near Mexico. Scott again advanced, stormed these posts, and at last, on the 14th of September, 1847, entered Mexico. Peace was soon after signed, and Mexico resigned California and New Mexico to the Americans. Settlers soon proceeded to these parts, and the discovery of immense gold-beds in California drew thousands there. In a short time it was made a state; Utah was formed into a territory, and colonized by the Mormons, a religious sect, who had been driven from Illinois.

48. At present the United States comprize thirty-one states, one district and eight territories, with a population of twenty-

---

occurred under Jackson? What Indian war began? 46. What took place towards the close of Tyler's administration? What war followed under Polk? What armies were sent into Mexico? Describe Taylor's campaigns. 47. Where did Scott land? Describe his advance to Mexico. What treaty followed? What was ceded to the United States? What

five mi  
canals,  
passeng  
times h  
industry  
for the  
privileg

49. T  
country  
took pla  
and Ka  
refuse t  
their pa

50. S  
chair ha

1. George
2. John
3. Thom
4. James
5. James
6. John
7. Andre
8. Martin
9. William
10. John
11. James
12. Zachar
13. Millar
14. Frank

have been  
fornia? 4  
took place

five millions. The whole country is covered with railroads, canals, and telegraphs, and every other means for conveying passengers or information. No country in ancient or modern times has had similar progress or gives an example of such industry, activity, plenty and happiness. The laws are made for the general good, and in most states all enjoy the same privileges.

49. The only question likely to disturb the peace of the country is that of slavery, concerning which violent discussions took place in Congress in 1854, on the bill organizing Nebraska and Kansas Territories; but no danger can result if people refuse to listen to hot and excited demagogues who appeal to their passions and are ever ready to condemn their neighbors.

50. Since the organization of the republic, the presidential chair has been filled by fourteen individuals, namely,—

1. George Washington of Virginia,	sat from 1789 to 1797.
2. John Adams of Massachusetts,	" 1797 to 1801.
3. Thomas Jefferson of Virginia,	" 1801 to 1809.
4. James Madison " "	" 1809 to 1817.
5. James Monroe " "	" 1817 to 1825.
6. John Quincy Adams of Massachusetts,	" 1825 to 1829.
7. Andrew Jackson of Tennessee,	" 1829 to 1837.
8. Martin Van Buren of New York,	" 1837 to 1841.
9. William Henry Harrison of Ohio,	" 1841.
10. John Tyler of Virginia,	" 1841 to 1845.
11. James K. Polk of Tennessee,	" 1845 to 1849.
12. Zachary Taylor of Mississippi,	" 1849 to 1850.
13. Millard Fillmore of New York,	" 1850 to 1853.
14. Franklin Pierce of New Hampshire,	" 1853 to 1857.

have been formed of this territory? What led to the settlement of California? 48. What is the present condition of the country? 49. What took place in 1854? 50. Name the presidents.

## GEOGRAPHY OF SOUTH AMERICA.

**Q.** How is South America divided ?

**A.** South America contains the Empire of Brazil, formerly a Portuguese colony, the republics of New Grenada, Venezuela, Equador, Peru, Bolivia, Chili, Buenos Ayres, Uruguay, and Paraguay, formerly Spanish colonies, and Guiana which consists of three colonies belonging to England, France and Holland.

**Q.** What are the striking natural features of South America ?

**A.** South America is skirted on the Pacific side by the Andes, which contain several volcanoes. About midway down the chain is Lake Titicaca the only large lake, and from the Andes there flow to the east the Amazon, Orinoco, and Rio de la Plata, three of the largest rivers in the world.

**Q.** What can you say of its vegetable and mineral resources ?

**A.** South America has extensive fertile plains on which herds of cattle roam, the soil is generally fertile, and the country abounds in mines of gold, silver and precious stones.

**Q.** What are the chief animals of South America ?

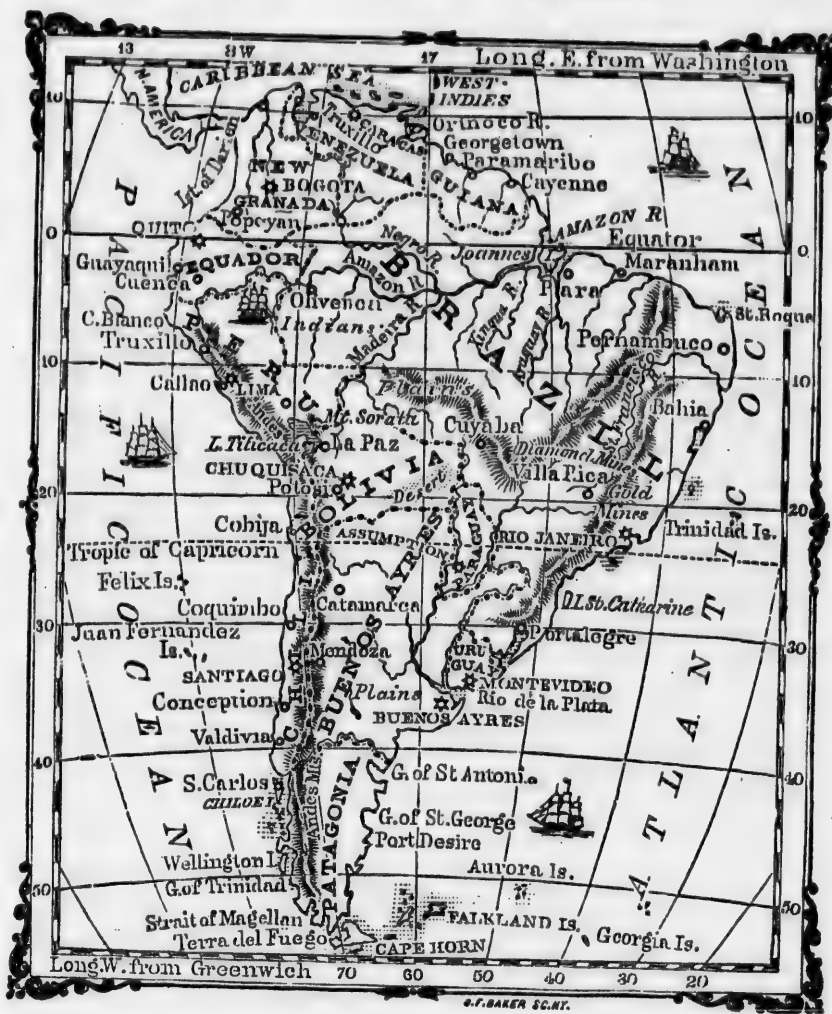
**A.** The chief quadrupeds peculiar to South America are the lama, useful for its wool and flesh, and as a beast of burthen ; the tapir, sloth and ant-eater ; the chief birds are the condor and ostrich ; the chief reptile the anaconda.

**Q.** From what do the cities frequently suffer ?

**A.** The cities, especially those near the volcanoes, frequently suffer from earthquakes, and some have been entirely destroyed by them ; and the whole country of the Andes is rent by chasms, precipices and torrents.



## MAP OF SOUTH AMERICA.





## QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF SOUTH AMERICA.

1. Boundaries of South America?
  2. Between what oceans is South America? What sea on the north? What straits on the south? What isthmus in the northwest?
  3. What cape in the east? west? south? What mountains in the west? What lake in South America?
  4. What is the largest country in South America? in what part is it? What three countries north of Brazil? N. G.—V.—G. What country in the south? What two countries north of Patagonia. What two small states between Brazil and Buenos Ayres? What countries touch Brazil on the west.
  5. What large river in Brazil? in Buenos Ayres? in Venezuela? What other river in Brazil? St. F. What are the largest branches of the Amazon on the south? on the north?
  6. What is the capital of New Granada? of Venezuela? of Ecuador? of Peru? of Bolivia? of Chili? of Buenos Ayres? of Paraguay? of Uruguay? of Brazil?
  7. What three towns in Guiana? Where is Rio Janeiro? Para? Concepcion? Potosi? Callao? Guayaquil? Truxillo? Pernambuco? Quito? Lima? Caraccas?
  8. Where are the Straits of Magellan? the Falkland Isles? Georgia Isles? Isle St. Catharine? Joannes Island? Felix Islands? Juan Fernandez? Terro del Fuego? Cape St. Roque? Cape Horn?
- 

1. first c  
1500.  
at col  
quired  
in the  
mission  
zation  
2. T  
reform  
who h  
of the  
Church  
century  
of Nas  
struggl  
reconq  
before  
3. T  
and its  
family c  
till 182

1. By  
What wa  
Brazil?  
royal fan  
present c

## BRAZIL.

1. Brazil is one of the largest countries in the world. It was first discovered by Pedro Alvarez Cabral, a Portuguese, in 1500. The flattering accounts of the country induced attempts at colonization, and settlers were sent out, but the colony acquired no permanence till 1549, when San Salvador was built in the bay of Bahia. A large fleet was sent with settlers, and missionaries spreading among the Indians, won them to civilization and Christianity.

2. The accounts of Brazil attracted attention. Calvin, the reformer, sent out a French colony, in 1555, under Villegagnon, who had been a knight of Malta, but owing to the dissensions of the leaders, and the return of Villegagnon to the Catholic Church, the whole failed. About the middle of the next century, the Dutch, under Willekens, Heyn, Maurice, count of Nassau, and others, conquered the country after a long struggle from 1624 to 1636, and held it till 1654, when it was reconquered by the Portuguese, who had revolted nine years before under Vieyra.

3. The country gradually increased in population and wealth, and its history is devoid of interest till 1806, when the royal family of Portugal arrived at Rio Janeiro, and remained there till 1821. At that time John VI. returned to Europe, leaving

---

1. By whom was Brazil discovered? When was it first settled? What was done for the Indians? 2. Describe the French attempt to settle Brazil? What is the history of the Dutch in Brazil? 3. When did the royal family arrive? What happened on their departure? Who is the present emperor.

his son, Pedro, as regent, but in 1823 Brazil declared itself independent, and offered the crown to Pedro, who was proclaimed emperor, and reigned till 1831, when he abdicated in favor of his son, Pedro II., the present emperor.

---

### SPANISH REPUBLICS.

1. Of all the native states of South America, Peru was by far the most civilized. It had from the twelfth century been governed by sovereigns of the race of Capac, apparently Asiatics, who raised the people from a state of barbarism. The Spaniards, hearing of the wealth of this kingdom, resolved to conquer it, and in 1525 Francis Pizarro crossed the isthmus of Panama, and sailed down the coast to explore; and finding the people civilized, dressed in cotton and woollen cloth, with an abundance of gold and silver ornaments, returned to fit out an expedition.

2. He sailed again in 1531, entered the country, seized the Inca Atahualpa, and finally put him to death. The Spaniards soon reduced the whole country, and founded the city of Lima. Detachments were sent to neighboring parts; Gonzalo de Ximenes in 1536 entered New Granada, and defeating Bogota, king of Moscas, conquered the country. Almagro attempted the conquest of Chili in 1538, but was driven out. In 1540 Valdivia conquered the country, and though afterwards killed

---

1. Describe ancient Peru? By whom was it explored? 2. When did he sail to conquer it? Describe the conquest of Peru. Describe that

in ba  
power

3.

was o  
Buenc  
of the  
ever, t  
triump

4.

Spania  
the V  
Caraca  
Ayres,  
ment o  
absolut

5. I

are the  
save th  
of miss  
on to  
another

6. I

and in  
aries w  
by the  
though  
verted,

of New  
Ayres s  
divided.  
the miss

in battle by the Araucanians, firmly established the Spanish power.

3. Buenos Ayres was discovered in 1516 by De Solis, but it was only in 1535 that Pedro de Mandoza founded the city of Buenos Ayres, and began the colonization. The early history of the country is much occupied by Indian wars, in which, however, the Spaniards under Alvez Nuñez Cabeza de Vaca, finally triumphed.

4. The portion of South America thus conquered by the Spaniards, was soon divided into five separate governments, the Viceroyalty of New Granada, the Captain-generalship of Caraccas, the Viceroyalty of Peru, the Viceroyalty of Buenos Ayres, and the Captain-generalship of Chili, under the government of Captain-generals and Viceroyes who possessed almost absolute power.

5. During this period of their colonial history the chief events are their connection with the Indian tribes, the efforts made to save them from oppression, as well as the stupendous attempts of missionaries to convert them. The slave trade was carried on to a great extent, and these unfortunate Africans were another object of missionary zeal.

6. In most parts these missions were surrounded by whites, and in a manner controlled by them. In Paraguay the missionaries were left to themselves. The mission was begun in 1586 by the Jesuits Barsena and Angulo. Others followed, and though many at first lost their lives, several tribes were converted, and they gradually extended their fold. At last, in

---

of New Granada? Describe that of Chili. 3. By whom was Buenos Ayres settled and conquered. 4. How was the Spanish territory now divided. 5. What are the chief events in its history? 6. Describe the missions of Paraguay. By whom were they founded. Why were

1610, they began to form them into villages, and initiate them into the arts of civilized life. As if by enchantment they accustomed their neophytes to labor, trained them to the various mechanical arts, and prepared them to take ultimately an equal grade with the Spaniard. Attacked by a piratical horde, who held St. Paul's, on the seacoast, the Indians raised an army, and by the counsels of their missionaries were soon formidable to their antagonists.

7. In its greatest prosperity these Reductions contained several hundred thousand Indians, in different villages, over which the missionaries presided, aided by chiefs. At last intriguing men, jealous of their influence, resolved to destroy them; accusations of every kind were made, and the missionaries were at last ordered to leave the country in 1767. The Indians, deprived of their guides and protectors, were soon exposed to cupidity and injustice, and the villages were gradually broken up.

8. During the French revolution, when Spain was occupied by Napoleon's army, the colonies in South America were in a very distracted state. Juntas were formed in several provinces, to conduct the government, in the name of Ferdinand VII., but in 1811 Venezuela and New Granada declared their independence, and a war ensued. Miranda, the republican general, was defeated in Venezuela, and in New Granada Morillo dispersed the congress, routed the army, and by sanguinary executions repressed all revolt. In 1813 Simon Bolivar took the command of the republican forces: though defeated at first, he

---

the Indians formed into an army? 7. What was its condition in its best days? What led to its destruction? 8. What took place during the French revolution? What two States declared their independence in 1811? Who subdued them? Who finally overthrew the Spaniards?

final  
to N  
9.  
of C  
he t  
after  
till  
into  
subsi  
being  
the C  
10  
first  
pende  
and  
power  
was  
Mart  
1818,  
remain  
even  
advan  
year  
gained  
the S

9. Wh  
did B  
countr  
What  
power

finally triumphed in Venezuela, and then in 1819 marched on to New Granada, and established the freedom of both provinces.

9. The two provinces were now erected into the Republic of Columbia, and Bolivar made president. By the year 1823 he totally overthrew the Spanish power. Bolivar was, soon after, suspected of aiming at royalty, but maintained his power till his death, in 1830. The next year Columbia was divided into New Granada, Venezuela and Equador, which have since subsisted as separate republics. Their history is uninteresting, being taken up with civil dissensions and attempts to enslave the Church.

10. La Plata, or Buenos Ayres, was the next to revolt: the first outbreak took place in 1810. In 1816 it declared its independence under the name of the United States of South America, and under General San Martin soon overthrew the Spanish power. Chili had revolted in 1810, but General O'Higgins was thwarted by rivals, and it was only by the aid of San Martin that the royalists were finally defeated at Maypa, in 1818, and Chili erected into a republic. Peru had hitherto remained completely in the Spanish power, and the viceroy even invaded Chili. In 1820 San Martin, with English aid, advanced from Chili into Peru, took Lima, and in the following year a republic was proclaimed. The royalists subsequently gained ground, but with the aid of Bolivar finally overthrew the Spaniards at Ayacucho, in 1824, where the Spanish rule

---

9. What republic was formed? What happened in 1830? 10. When did Buenos Ayres declare its independence? What general freed the country? What other country by his aid threw off the Spanish yoke? What induced San Martin to attack Peru? Where was the Spanish power in South America finally overthrown? What republics were

in South America ended. Two other republics were then formed, Bolivia and Peru.

11. Paraguay threw off the Spanish yoke in 1814, but refused all connection with the neighboring republics. Dr. Francia



Montevideo.

assumed the government, and till 1842 ruled with despotic sway, excluding all foreigners, and endeavoring to form the people to self reliance and industry. On his death a president was chosen. Uruguay was a disputed territory, claimed by Brazil and Buenos Ayres, but finally erected into a separate

---

formed? 11. What is the history of Paraguay since 1814? What led to the forming of Uruguay? 12. What kind of a country is Guiana? Why

republic  
these  
time fr

12. C  
three g  
Europe  
about o  
Guiana  
between

13. C  
compan  
of great  
exist, a

14. T  
planted  
in other  
ments at  
by the D

15. T  
others, e

Is it reman  
zuela? W  
Brazil? I  
supposed  
what river  
places? V



republic. Like the Spanish republics in the north, most of these have been disturbed by civil wars, and have from time to time fallen under the tyrannical sway of ambitious men.

---

### GUIANA.

12. Guiana is a small country, and yet it is divided between three great European powers. It is peculiar as being the only European colony in South America. British Guiana embraces about one half of the country, lying next to Venezuela. Dutch Guiana lies east of this, and French Guiana, or Cayenne, is between Dutch Guiana and Brazil.

13. Guiana was discovered by Vincent Pinzon, one of the companions of Columbus, and was at first supposed to be a place of great wealth. Here it was that El Dorado was believed to exist, a country with streets and houses of gold.

14. The first settlements were made by the Dutch who planted a colony on the Demerara river, in 1590, and soon after in other places. Some years after, the English formed settlements at Surinam and Berbice, but their colony was conquered by the Dutch, who took them instead of New York.

15. The French colonized Cayenne, in 1633, and unlike the others, endeavored to convert the natives by sending zealous

---

Is it remarkable? How is it divided? Which part lies next to Venezuela? Which in the middle? Which between Dutch Guiana and Brazil? 13. By whom was it discovered? Who was he? What was it supposed to be? 14. By whom were the first settlements made? On what river? In what year? Who formed settlements in 1634? In what places? Who took these? For what did she retain them? 15. When

missionaries among them. Leonard Neale, an American, and second archbishop of Baltimore, was for many years a missionary in this part, long before the revolution. The French now use Cayenne as a place of transportation for criminals and especially for political offenders.

16. During the wars of the French revolution the English seized all Dutch Guiana, and at the peace in 1813, restored only a small portion to Holland.

## PATAGONIA.

17. Patagonia is a dreary, barren country, inhabited by savage tribes. As no European settlement has ever been made here, it is impossible to give its history; and we here conclude the history of America.

was Cayenne founded? What did the French do? What celebrated American missionary labored here? How does France use Cayenne? 16. What happened during the wars of the French revolution? What did the English restore at the peace? 17. What can you tell us of Patagonia?

Iceland  
Greece  
Vinal  
Colu  
Mexi  
Peru  
Buen  
New  
Chili  
Braz  
Fren  
Flori  
Jesu  
Nova  
Virgi  
Canac  
New  
Plym  
Canac  
Mary  
Conn  
Braz  
India  
Union  
Huron  
North  
New Y  
South  
The M  
King  
Bacon  
Penns  
Illinoi

## CHRONOLOGY OF AMERICA.

	A. C.
Iceland colonized, . . . . .	874
Greenland discovered, . . . . .	982
Vinland discovered about . . . . .	1000
Columbus discovers the West Indies, . . . . .	1492
Mexico discovered by Cortes, . . . . .	1521
Peru conquered by Pizarro, . . . . .	1531
Buenos Ayres founded by Mendoza, . . . . .	1535
New Granada taken by the Spaniards, . . . . .	1538
Chili reduced by Spaniards, . . . . .	1540
Brazil settled by Portuguese, . . . . .	1549
French in Brazil, . . . . .	1555
Florida settled by Spaniards, . . . . .	1565
Jesuits begin missions in Paraguay, . . . . .	1585
Nova Scotia settled by the French, . . . . .	1605
Virginia settled by the English, . . . . .	1607
Canada settled by the French, . . . . .	1608
New York settled by the Dutch, . . . . .	1613
Plymouth, Massachusetts, settled by English separatists, . . . . .	1620
Canada taken by the English, . . . . .	1629
Maryland settled, . . . . .	1634
Connecticut and Rhode Island settled, . . . . .	1635
Brazil conquered by the Dutch, . . . . .	1636
Indian war on New England, . . . . .	1637
Union of the New England colonies, . . . . .	1643
Hurons destroyed by Iroquois, . . . . .	1649
North Carolina settled, . . . . .	1650
New York taken by the English, . . . . .	1664
South Carolina settled, . . . . .	1670
The Mississippi explored by Marquette, . . . . .	1673
King Philip's war against New England, . . . . .	1675
Bacon's rebellion in Virginia, . . . . .	1676
Pennsylvania settled, . . . . .	1681
Illinois and Arkansas settled by the French, . . . . .	1681

War between English and French colonies, (William III.,)	1689
Second war, (Queen Anne's,)	1702
Delaware made a separate colony,	1703
Georgia settled,	1733
Negro plot in New York,	1741
Canada conquered,	1759
France cedes to England all her colonies east of the Mississippi,	1763
"    "    Spain all west of the Mississippi,	1763
French in Louisiana attempt to form a republic,	1766
English colonies obtain repeal of the Stamp Act,	1766
Jesuit missions in Paraguay destroyed,	1767
Tea destroyed at Boston,	1773
Battle of Lexington begins the American revolution,	1775
Washington driven from New York,	1776
The United States declare their independence,	1776
The English army under Burgoyne surrenders,	1777
The English under Cornwallis surrender,	1781
England acknowledges the United States,	1783
Washington president,	1789
Negroes in Hayti revolt,	1793
Louisiana ceded back to France,	1800
Louisiana purchased by the United States,	1803
Mexico revolts,	1810
Venezuela,	1811
War between England and the United States,	1812
Paraguay becomes independent,	1814
Buenos Ayres becomes independent,	1816
Chili delivered,	1818
Colombia becomes independent,	1819
Florida ceded to the United States,	1820
Brazil becomes an empire,	1823
Peru and Bolivia formed into republics,	1824
Columbia divided,	1830
Texas revolts,	1836
Texas annexed to the United States,	1845
War with Mexico,	1846
California and New Mexico ceded,	1848

1.  
does  
Mul  
2.  
in th  
Wha  
Born  
3.  
islan  
Ans.  
4.  
south  
Zeal  
Aust  
The  
town  
5.  
What  
Ans.  
prico  
strait  
6.  
all t  
neare  
sever  
Ans.  
Wash  
the m  
those  
What  
lies s  
two g

QUESTIONS ON THE MAP OF OCEANICA.

1. In what ocean is Oceanica? *Ans.* In the Pacific Ocean. Of what does it consist? *Ans.* Of islands. What are the chief divisions? *Ans.* Malaysia, Australasia and Polynesia.

2. In what part of the Pacific Ocean is Malaysia? *Ans.* Malaysia is in the north-western part of the Pacific, near China and Farther India. What are the principal islands in this division? *Ans.* The Philippines, Borneo, Java, Sumatra, Celebes and the Moluccas.

3. To whom do the Philippines belong? *Ans.* To Spain. The other islands? *Ans.* To Holland. What is the capital of the Philippines? *Ans.* Manilla. Of Java? *Ans.* Batavia.

4. In what direction from Malaysia is Australasia? *Ans.* In the south-east. What are the chief islands? *Ans.* Australia, Papua, New Zealand and Van Diemen's Land. What are the highest mountains in Australia? *Ans.* The Blue Mountains. What is the largest river? The Murray river. What is the capital? *Ans.* Sidney. What other towns are there? *Ans.* New Castle and Paramatta.

5. Of what does New Zealand consist? *Ans.* Of two distinct islands. What strait separates them? *Ans.* Cook's Strait. What is the capital? *Ans.* Auckland. What tropic crosses Australia? *Ans.* Tropic of Capricorn. What strait north of Australia? *Ans.* Torres' Strait. What strait between Australia and Van Diemen's land? *Ans.* Bs.

6. In what part of the Pacific is Polynesia? *Ans.* Polynesia embraces all the western part of Oceanica. To which continent does it lie nearest? *Ans.* America. Of what does Polynesia consist? *Ans.* Of several groups of small islands. Which are the principal groups? *Ans.* The principal groups are the Ladrões, Sandwich, Marquesas, Washington, Society, Georgian, Pearl and Friendly islands. Which is the most northerly group? *Ans.* The Sandwich islands. Of what are those composed? *Ans.* Of Hawaii, Oahu and some smaller islands. What group lies on the north-west? *Ans.* The Ladrões. What group lies south of the Ladrões? *Ans.* The Carolines. To whom do these two groups belong? *Ans.* Spain. What group of islands lies south-

east of the Sandwich islands? *Ans.* The Marquesas. What group lies south-west of the Marquesas? *Ans.* The Society islands. Which is the largest of the Society islands? *Ans.* Tahiti. What island lies south-east of Tahiti? *Ans.* Pitcairns. What groups lie west of the Society islands? *Ans.* The Friendly, Feejee and Navigators islands. What islands lie nearest to North America? *Ans.* The Sandwich islands. What islands lie nearest to China? *Ans.* The Philippines. To Malacca? *Ans.* Sumatra. Which is the largest island in Oceanica? *Ans.* Australia.

---

1  
Occ  
and  
2  
tim  
Cel  
also  
3  
on  
yet  
and  
4  
mos  
whi  
out  
5  
gra  
occ  
civi  
and

1.  
the  
is th  
of t  
islan  
inha

## GEOGRAPHY OF OCEANICA.

1. Oceanica comprises all the islands lying in the Pacific Ocean. These are sometimes divided into Australasia, Malaysia and Polynesia; but no permanent division has yet been made.

2. The largest of these islands is Australia, which is sometimes called a continent. Borneo, Sumatra, Java, Luzon, Celebes, Papua, New Zealand and Van Diemen's Land, are also quite extensive, but the rest are generally small.

3. Many of these islands are of volcanic origin, others based on coral reefs. Although most of them lie in the torrid zone, yet as they are traversed by mountains, the climate is temperate and delightful.

4. These islands are rich in gold, diamonds, spices, and the most luscious fruits, and are noted for the strange animals which are found in them, such as the kangaroo, orang-outang, duck-bill and black swan.

5. The inhabitants are chiefly Malays, Negroes, and emigrants from various parts of Europe and Asia. The Malays occupy all Malaysia and Polynesia, the chief tribes being the civilized Javanese and Battas: the Negroes occupy Australasia and several of the islands in other parts

---

1. What does Oceanica comprise? How is it divided? 2. Which is the largest island? What other extensive islands are there? 3. What is the origin of many of these islands? of others? In what zone do most of them lie? What makes the climate pleasant? 4. In what are these islands rich? For what are they noted? 5. Of what three races are the inhabitants? Where are the Malays found? What are the chief tribes



6. The religions which prevail are Brahminism, Buddhism, both nearly extinct, Mohammedanism, and various horrid forms of Paganism, properly so called, or idolatry. Christianity has, however, made great progress, and in some parts there is a large European population.

---

## HISTORY OF OCEANICA.

### MALAYSIA.

1. Little is known of the early history of these islands: they were unknown to Europeans till towards the close of the thirteenth century, when several of the Malaysian isles were visited by the Blessed Oderic of Friuli, and by Marco Polo. The Javanese were the most powerful people, and have at three different epochs ruled the archipelago. In the middle of the thirteenth century they embraced the worship of Buddha, but retained it only for a century: when they were conquered by the Hindoos, and adopted Brahminism.

2. The most famous sovereigns were Alit Widjiaya in the

---

Where are the Negroes found? 6. What are the prevailing religions? What two are nearly extinct? What of Christianity?

1. What is known of the early history of these islands? By whom were they first visited? In what century? Who are the most powerful people? How often have they ruled the Archipelago? When did they embrace the religion of Buddha? How long did they retain it? By whom were they then conquered? What religion did they then adopt? 2. Who were the most famous sovereigns in the fourteenth and fifteenth centuries? Who conquered Java in 1478? What great sultan flourished in the seventeenth century? What religion do they now profess?

fourteenth, Angka Widjiaya in the fifteenth centuries, but in 1478 Java was conquered by the Mohammedans. Under them the sultan of Matarem, in the seventeenth century, was a most powerful monarch: his kingdom embraced not only Java, but the surrounding islands. During this epoch these islands embraced the religion of Mahomet, which they still profess.

3. These islands were visited by the Portuguese in the early part of the sixteenth century, and St. Francis Xavier preached the gospel in several of them; but in 1577 the Dutch planted a colony in Java, and soon reduced all the islands, of which they are still the masters. They maintain their authority partly by intrigue and partly by force, supporting an army of 15,000 men. Batavia is the capital of the Dutch East India possessions.

4. The Philippine islands were discovered in 1520 by Magellan, who was killed there: and soon after visited by the Spaniards, who planted a colony, and did much by their missionaries to convert the natives. Manilla, in the island of Luzon, a large and flourishing city, is the capital of the Spanish East Indies.

---

### AUSTRALASIA.

5. Australia was discovered in 1606 by Louis Torres, a Spanish commander, and by Duyfhen, a Dutch navigator. The

---

3. What European nation first visited these islands? Who preached the gospel in several islands? When did the Dutch plant a colony in Java? How do they maintain their authority? What is their capital? 4. By whom were the Philippines discovered? What happened to him here? Who planted a colony here? What did they do for the natives? What is the capital of the Spanish East Indies? 5. By whom was Australia discovered? In what year? Who gave it its present name? By whom

name Australia was given to it in 1608 by Quiros, a Spanish admiral, who visited much of the coast. Van Diemen's Land was discovered in 1642 by Tasman, who gave it its present name.

6. Although several nations had sent expeditions to the shores of these islands, it was only in 1770 that any European nation claimed them. In that year Captain Cook visited Australia, and naming Botany Bay from the luxuriant vegetation which enlivened it, took possession of the country in the name of England, and planted the British flag.

7. In 1787 the English government resolved to use this island as a place for convicts, and a fleet of nine vessels was sent out under Commodore Phillips, carrying 757 convicts and 260 government employées. With these he founded the town of Sydney, and established a system of martial law.

8. Land was assigned to such convicts as showed an inclination to work, and in two years seven hundred acres were cleared; and in 1791 the convicts began to live without any government aid. Many, however, retained their old habits, and defeated all the designs of the excellent Governor Phillips, who was at last compelled to resign.

9. Under subsequent governors other settlements were formed,

---

was Van Diemen's Land discovered? 6. When were these islands first claimed by any European nation? Who visited Australia in that year? What bay did he name? Why did he call it Botany Bay? What else did he do? 7. What did the English government resolve to make it? What did they send out? In what year? Who was the first governor? What city did he found? 8. What was assigned to each convict? How much land was cleared in two years? When were the convicts able to support themselves? What was the conduct of many? 9. What led to the transportation of many? What were introduced in 1802? When

espe  
with  
and  
of w  
Lan  
the f  
10  
and  
orga  
settle  
disco  
then  
Aust  
11  
and t  
tives  
medic  
havin  
nists  
rather  
12.  
Zeala  
but I  
have c

was V  
what y  
establi  
11. W  
natives  
history  
have b

especially when the Irish rebellion in 1798 crowded the prisons with gallant but unfortunate men. In 1802 four merino-rams, and as many sheep, were sent out, and thus led to the raising of wool, one of the great sources of wealth. Van Diemen's Land was settled in 1797, when Hobart's Town was begun at the foot of Table mountain, in a beautiful location.

10. In 1827 the absolute authority of the governors ended, and a legislative colony was established, and regular courts organized, and the colony increased by emigration of free settlers. In 1851 a new aspect was given to affairs, by the discovery of gold mines similar to those of California, and since then a tide of emigration, almost unparalleled, has flowed to Australia.

11. The religions which prevail in the island are the Catholic and the Protestant, which are about equally balanced. The natives are Pagans, and the Catholic missionaries, especially the Benedictines, have made great efforts for their conversion, several having lost their lives in their holy undertaking; but the colonists generally have no regard for the natives, and treat them rather as beasts than as men.

12. The history of the other islands is unimportant. New Zealand was long noted for the savage character of its people; but English settlements have been formed, and missionaries have done much to restrain the ferocity of the natives.

---

was Van Diemen's Land settled? What was the first town? 10. In what year did the absolute power of the governors end? What was then established? What was discovered in 1851? What resulted from this? 11. What are the prevailing religions? What is the religion of the natives? Who have converted many? 12. What can you say of the history of the other islands? For what was New Zealand noted? What have been formed there? Who have done much to civilize the people?

## POLYNESIA.

1. Polynesia, which signifies "*many islands*," includes all the small islands in the western part of the Pacific Ocean. Some of these were discovered as early as the time of Magellan, who was killed in 1521, in one of the Ladrone Islands, but they were made known chiefly by the voyages of Cook and La Pérouse, about the time of the American revolution.

2. The Ladrone or Marian Islands, were inhabited by a very thievish set of people, whom the Spaniards called Ladrone or robbers, and in this way the group got its name. They were fierce and savage, and though zealous missionaries tried repeatedly to convert them, the islanders refused to embrace Christianity and put most of the missionaries to death. In consequence of repeated wars the natives are almost completely destroyed. These islands and the Carolines still belong to Spain.

3. The Sandwich Islands or kingdom of Hawaii, is the most important group in Polynesia. It consists of the large island of Hawaii, with Maui, Oahu, and some smaller ones.

4. These islands were discovered by Captain Cook who was

---

1. What does Polynesia signify? By whom were these islands first discovered? In what year? Where was he killed? By whose voyages are they chiefly known? About what time were these voyages made? 2. What other name have the Ladrone? Why are they called Ladrone? What can you tell of the natives? How did they treat the missionaries? What has become of them? What other islands belong to Spain? 3. What kingdom do the Sandwich Islands form? What can you say of this group? What large island does it contain? What smaller ones? 4. By whom were these islands discovered? What happened to him here? Who occasionally visited the islands after this?

killed  
time  
vessel

5.  
prince  
I., a  
battle  
away  
and  
ished  
order  
bracket  
died

6.  
Prot  
conv  
to th  
of th  
arriv

7.  
the  
false

5. By  
arose  
can y  
What  
Whom  
they  
regen  
of th  
treat

killed here in 1778 in a contest with the natives. After that time they were occasionally visited by European and American vessels.

5. The islands were originally governed by various petty princes, but towards the close of the last century Kamehameha I., a man of prodigious strength and courage, after an hundred battles conquered most of the princes and ruled with undisputed sway till 1819, maintaining his power by a well equipped army and navy. His successor Kamehameha II. immediately abolished idolatry at the suggestion of the European residents, and ordered all the idols and temples to be destroyed, and after embracing the Catholic religion proceeded to England, where he died in 1823, leaving his son an infant.

6. Previous to his death, and about the year 1820, several Protestant missionaries arrived and began their labors for the conversion of the people, which have been zealously prosecuted to the present time. They soon acquired a complete control of the regent Kaahumanu, and when Catholic missionaries arrived, induced her to forbid them to land.

7. From the year 1828 a persecution was carried on against the Catholics and their missionaries, unparalleled in hideous falsehood and cruelty except by Nicholas in his persecution of

---

5. By whom were the islands originally governed? What great prince arose towards the close of the last century? What did he do? What can you tell us of him? When did he die? Who succeeded him? What was the first act of King Kamehameha II? Where did he die? Whom did he leave as king? 6. Who arrived about 1820? What did they begin? What did they soon obtain? What did they induce the regent to do, when Catholic missionaries came? 7. What can you say of this persecution? How long did it last? How were the Catholics treated? What is their present condition? On what country is this e

the Poles. This state of things continued till 1839, and during that long persecution the Catholics were imprisoned, tortured, put to death, deprived of their property and civil rights, so that they are now the poorest in the islands. It is a reproach to us Americans, that while our government tolerates all religions, any of our countrymen should have instigated and encouraged such persecution.

8. The present king is Kamehameha III. During his reign, a great number of the people have embraced Christianity; schools and seminaries have been established, a constitution adopted, and a code of laws published. Much of this is the work of the missionaries, but the progress of the better class of the people themselves is extraordinary. At the same time, however, his reign is noted for the rapid decrease of the native population.

9. The government is now administered by the king, a house of hereditary nobles, and house of representatives; but at the present moment negotiations are on foot to annex the Hawaiian kingdom to the United States.

10. The Society Islands were first visited in 1766 by Wallis, and derive their name from the manner in which he was received by the natives. Here, too, missionaries established themselves and converted many of the natives, but involved the country in troubles by their treatment of Catholic missionaries. Queen Pomare was compelled by France to make reparation for injuries done to natives of France, at the instiga-

---

blot? 8. Who is the present king? What are the chief events of his reign? 9. How is the government administered? What negotiations are now going on? 10. By whom were the Society Islands discovered? In what year? Who have labored successfully here? What queen had troubles with France? What missionary caused these troubles? What



tion of Mr. Pritchard, who, after thus persecuting Catholics, finally embraced the religion which he had oppressed.

11. Pitcairn's Island is noted for its curious history. In 1790 the crew of the English ship *Bounty* mutinied, put the captain in a boat and sailed off to Tahiti, one of the Society Islands, and taking women as wives, pursued their voyage to Pitcairn's Island, where they landed and began a settlement. For many years they remained undiscovered, and at last, when only one of the old mutineers was alive, a vessel touching there was surprized to find people speaking English and familiar with Christianity. In a little while the whole was explained, and for the first time the fate of the mutineers became known.

12. The history of the other islands in this division is not important or interesting; and having thus given a sketch of the history of all the different nations in ancient or modern times, we shall add an outline of the history of religion, and then leave you to pursue your studies in some larger book.

---

singular change did he make? 11. For what is Pitcairn's Island noted? In what year did the mutiny of the ship *Bounty* take place? Where did the mutineers sail? How many survived when the island was discovered? 12. What can you say of the history of the other islands.

---

## CHRONOLOGY OF OCEANICA.

Blessed Oderic preaches in Malaysia, (about)	1306
Hindoos conquer Java, (about)	1350
Mahomedans conquer it,	1478
Magellan killed at the Ladrone Islands,	1521
St. Francis Xavier preaches in Malaysia,	1547
Dutch settle in Java,	1577
Torres discovers Australia,	1606
Australia named by Quiros,	1608
Friendly Islands discovered,	1766
Captain Cook at Botany Bay,	1770
Captain Cook killed,	1778
Sidney founded as a convict colony,	1787
Pitcairn's Island settled,	1790
Kamehameha I. reigns,	1791
Van Diemen's Land settled,	1797
Merino sheep introduced into Australia,	1802
Kamehameha II. abolishes idolatry,	1819
Protestant mission in Sandwich Islands,	1820
Catholic mission founded,	1828
Kamehameha III. an infant succeeds,	1824
Legislature convened in Australia,	1827
Persecution of the Catholics in the Sandwich Islands,	1828
Gold discovered in Australia,	1851

## THE CHURCH.

1. The history of Christianity enters into the history of most countries, and especially into that of Italy, since the middle ages and we have frequently spoken of it. We shall here give a connected sketch.



St. Paul stoned at Lystra

2. When the apostles, by the descent of the Holy Ghost at Pentecost, were prepared for their great work, the Church was

2. To whom was the Gospel first preached? To whom then? Who was the chief of the Apostles? What other great Apostle was raised

founded, and they dispersed into various parts, preaching the gospel first to the Jews, and then to the Pagans in various countries. St. Peter was recognized as the chief of the apostles, and assembled them to decide on various questions that had arisen. Besides the original apostles, God raised up St. Paul, who by his eloquence and zeal greatly extended the faith.

3. In the time of the apostles, the gospel was preached in most parts of the Roman Empire, in Persia, India, Abyssinia, and other parts which never yielded to the Romans. St. Peter proceeded to Rome, and was there put to death with St. Paul in the first general persecution. His successors, the bishops of Rome, have always claimed the primacy which he enjoyed, and have for many centuries been called the Popes: Recognized once as the head of all Christian Churches, the Pope is still the head of the Catholic Church, which embraces the great majority of Christians.

4. The Roman emperors were bitterly opposed to Christianity, and repeatedly instituted terrible persecutions in which millions of Christians perished, but the truth gained ground, and when Constantine became a Christian, Paganism received a death blow from which it never recovered. By this time the Church had assumed a distinct form. The Church was divided into sections over which bishops presided; under them were the priests attached to the several Churches. The worship of God was the mass, considered a sacrifice in which the body and blood of Christ were daily offered up. The Churches founded

---

up? 3. In what countries was the gospel preached in the time of the apostles? Where did St. Peter fix his see? What are his successors called? 4. How did the Roman emperors treat the Christians? Who was the first Christian emperor? Describe the form which the Church assumed? What was the worship? What languages were used?

in various parts, offered up this sacrifice in their respective languages; the Greek prevailed over all that has been lately subject to Turkey, except in Armenia, where the Armenian prevailed. The rest of the empire used the Latin rite. There was also a Syriac, a Coptic, an Ethiopian, and an Arabic rite, but all were the same service.

5. After the period of the persecutions, the Church was disturbed by heresies, which were attempts made by vain men to alter the faith as generally received. Most of these originated among the Greeks, and the most important was that of Arius, which spread over nearly all the Greek Church, and was protected by several of the Greek emperors.

6. While the Greek Church was thus divided, the Latin more closely connected with the Popes, gradually extended, and when the barbarians invaded the empire, civilized and converted those fierce tribes. In this way France, England and Spain were in a manner twice converted: Ireland and Scotland never were conquered by Pagans, but always retained the faith first planted. From these countries new missionaries went forth, Germany, Denmark, Norway and Sweden were converted, chiefly by English and Irish missionaries, who penetrated even to Iceland, Greenland, and the continent of America, everywhere introducing the Latin rite.

7. The Greek Church penetrated into Russia and Poland, and translating their liturgy into Slavonic, founded a new rite. The Nestorians, a heretical branch of the Church, showed

---

5. What soon disturbed the Church? In which part did most arise? What was the most important heresy? 6. What was the Latin Church doing? What countries were converted? 7. What countries were converted from Greece? What eastern sect spread to all parts of Asia?

more activity: they penetrated into most Asiatic countries, and founded churches even in China, but in no case succeeded in converting entire nations, as was the case in the west.

8. In all parts of Christendom monastic orders arose as piety declined. Then persons wishing to lead a more retired life withdrew to desert spots, as hermits, or assembled in houses together, and binding themselves by vows, lived under rules. In the east St. Anthony founded the first monastery, and St. Basil drew up the rules which now prevail. In the west the rule of St. Columba first prevailed, but that of St. Benedict soon took its place. To these monks is due all the ancient learning that we possess, as well as many of the greatest improvements in science and art.

9. During the Middle Ages the bishops took part in the councils of the various kingdoms, and the kings claimed the right of appointing clergymen to the various churches and sees. This led to great troubles, for the Popes manfully opposed this absurd claim of the princes, and maintained the freedom of the Church. The crusades for a time checked this, and produced more harmony, and at this time arose military orders, half military, half monastic, such as the Templars, Hospitallers, Teutonic Knights and others. In all these contentions, however, piety declined; until in the twelfth century St. Francis and St. Dominic founded the mendicant orders to draw people to piety, by preaching, and by the example of their own renunciation of all earthly comfort.

---

8. What arose in all parts of Christendom? Who are the chief founders of monastic life? 9. What position did bishops occupy in the middle ages? What struggle ensued? What produced harmony for a time? What orders arose during the crusades? What orders were founded to

10. In the sixteenth century the revival of learning aided the scholastic disputes, and gave new cause of dissension. At last Martin Luther, a man of great popular eloquence, began an attack on the doctrine of indulgences, and when condemned, attacked the whole religious system. Several of the German princes espoused his cause, and plundered and destroyed most of the churches and convents, with their libraries and schools. Henry VIII. of England quarreled with the Pope, and imitated their example, although he did not embrace the doctrines of Luther. Zuinglius, and after him, Calvin, in Switzerland, like Luther, attacked the Church, on various points of doctrine.

11. These reformers all agreed in denying the hierarchy so long acknowledged, rejected the sacrifice of the mass, and in its place substituted a service consisting simply of prayer. He likewise rejected the belief of union in prayer with the faithful departed, the validity of vows, or the right of any commissioned clergy to expound the gospel.

12. From this moment innumerable sects arose. In England, Denmark, Norway and Sweden, the kings retained the degree of bishops; where the people had more power these were abolished, as is the case in all Calvinist churches, which are now the most numerous. Few of these sects have any settled doctrines, except on certain particular points, and people easily pass from one to another, there being no duties of obligation imposed, as in the Catholic Church.

13. After the Reformation there arose in Catholic countries

---

revive piety? 10. What happened in the sixteenth century? What did the princes who joined the reformers do? 11. In what did the various reformers agree? 12. What arose from the difference of opinion? What can you say of their precise doctrines? 13. What arose in Catholic countries? What orders were formed? Did those who embraced the



many holy men, who, by new religious orders, as the Jesuits, Lazarists, Oratorians and others, revived piety and learning, and carried the faith to foreign countries. In those countries where the Reformation triumphed, the reformers did not permit such as chose to adhere to the old religion, but by penal laws and persecution endeavored to extirpate it entirely: and many thousands were put to death in Germany, Sweden, England, Ireland and Scotland. In like manner those countries which remained Catholic, punished severely any attempt to introduce the new opinions. In France the struggle was long and bloody, but the Catholic religion remained the religion of the state.

14. After the wars of the Reformation came a period of indifference in most of the northern countries. In England several began to avow and propagate Deism, which denied all but the existence of God. This spread to France, and attacks on religion were constantly made by infidel writers, and politicians, who at last obtained the suppression of the Jesuits, whom they feared, and soon after overthrew all religion in France. Since the French revolution their wicked doctrines have spread into Italy and Spain, and a new form of infidelity, called Rationalism, has arisen in Germany, and these countries have of late been much disturbed by revolutions, aimed chiefly at religion.

15. During the French revolution a great persecution took place in France. Many holy bishops, priests and nuns were cruelly put to death, the churches and convents destroyed, and

---

new doctrines permit others to continue in their old faith? 14. What ensued from the Reformation in the north? What evil did it produce in France? To what countries has it since spread? 15. What took place during the French revolution? Who were put to death? Who was

every effort made to crush religion. When the French conquered Italy they imprisoned Pope Pius VI. till his death.

16. On the accession of Napoleon to the empire he restored religion in France, but afterwards imprisoned Pope Pius VII. and began to oppress the Church. For this he was excommunicated, and his power from that moment fell.

17. Since the close of the French revolution the most important events in the history of the Church are the rapid increase of catholicity in the United States, the restoration of the Society of Jesus, the great missions in China and Oceanica, and the partial emancipation of the Catholics in the British islands.

18. Persecutions have, however, been renewed of late years. In Spain, soon after the death of Ferdinand VII, the new government seized all the church property, plundered the convents, and expelled the religious, banishing most of the bishops for opposing their sacrilege.

19. Some years later, the Protestant cantons in Switzerland made war on the Catholic cantons, and at last conquering them plundered the convents and religious houses, destroying the liberty of the Catholic cantons—for they are no longer free to follow their own religion; the tyrants even expelled the good monks of Mount St. Bernard, whose charity is honored over the whole world.

20. In 1848 great revolutions took place in Europe, and in Italy a persecution of the Church ensued. Pope Pius IX. was imprisoned in his palace, and after seeing Cardinal Palma

---

imprisoned? 16. Who restored the Catholic religion? What was his subsequent conduct? 17. What have been the most important events since the close of the French revolution? 18. What have been renewed? What took place in Spain on the death of Ferdinand VII.? 19. What took place in Switzerland? What did the tyrants even do? 20. What

stabbed in his presence, escaped in disguise to Naples. During his absence several hundred priests and religious were put to death in his dominions by the republican party; but they were finally subdued by Napoleon III. and the Pope restored.

21. In the United States the Catholics have been frequently harassed by acts of violence, and a great number of churches, convents and houses occupied by Catholics, have at various times been destroyed, and every attempt is made to misrepresent and blacken them in order to deprive them of their civil rights.

22. The most eminent persons who have flourished in the Church in modern times have been St. Ignatius, the founder of the Jesuits; St. Philip Neri, St. Francis Xavier, St. Rose of Lima—an American; St. Vincent of Paul, the founder of the Sisters of Charity; St. Alphonsus Liguori, the founder of the Redemptorists; Fenelon, and many others.

---

took place in 1848? What happened to Pius IX? What occurred in his absence? Who restored him? 21. What has been the position of the Catholics in the United States? 22. Name some of the most eminent persons who have flourished in the Church in modern times.

THE END.

es. During  
were put to  
they were  
ored.

a frequently  
of churches,  
at various  
o misrepre-  
f their civil

hed in the  
founder of  
t. Rose of  
nder of the  
der of the

---

occurred in  
osition of the  
most eminent